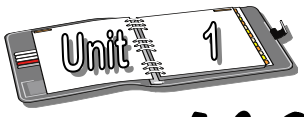
CONTENTS فهرس

Subject matter	Page
Unit 1	2
Unit 2	12
Unit 3	24
Revision A	35
Practice tests 1	36
Unit 4	39
Unit 5	50
Unit 6	59
Revision B	70
Practice tests 2	71
Unit 7	74
Unit 8	85
Unit 9	96
Revision C	107
Practice tests 3	108
The reader	112
Chapter 1	115
Chapter 2	126
Chapter 3	135



Visitors to Egypt

Lessons 1 & 2

souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية	youth hostel	نزل – بيت شباب	temple	معبد
advise	ينصح	shark	سمك القرش	ancient	قديم
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	modern	حديث	good idea	فكرة جيدة
are lost	يتوه	comfortable	مريح	guide	مرشد
need help	يحتاج مساعدة	find out	يعرف – يكتشف	guidebook	دليل سياحي
far from	بعيد عن	information	معلومات	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
beaches	شواطيء	centre	مركز – وسط	crafts	مصنوعات يدوية
windy	عاصف	recommend	يوصي بـ	bazaar	بازار سياحي
definitely	بالتأكيد	island	جزيرة	lunchtime	وقت الغداء
Hurghada	الغردقة	around	حول	traditional	تقليدي
windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج	scuba diving	الغوص تحت الماء	part	جزء
boat trip	رحلة بالقارب	snorkeling	الغطس تحت الماء	port	ميناء
police station	قسم الشرطة	water sports	العاب مائية	sound	صوت – يبدو
middle	وسط	forget	ينسي	remember	يتذكر
wonderful	رائع	different	مختلف	visitors	زائرون
holiday	أجازة	seasons	فصول السنة	suggest	يقترح

Scuba (self-contained underwater breathing apparatus) جهاز تنفس ذاتى التحكم تحت الماء

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
send	يرسل	sent	sent
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
find	يجد	found	found
forget	ينسي	forgot	forgotten
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
hurt	يصيب	hurt	hurt
swim	يسبح	swam	swum

CONFUSING WORDS

There	هناك	their	ملكهم
hostel	نزل	hotel	فندق
breathe	يتنفس	breath	نفس
weather	طقس	whether	لو
advise	ينصح	advice	نصيحة
souvenir	تذكار	present	هدية

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
Different	مختلف	The same	نفس
Beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
modern	حديث	ancient	قديم

PREPOSITION

under the water	تحت الماء	far from	بعيد عن
for a holiday	لقضاء عطلة	In the middle of	في وسط
look out	يحترس	In the sun	في الشمس
find out	يكتشف	In ten minutes	في خلال عشر دقائق

Expression تعبيرات هامة

Catch a thief	يقبض علي لص	Give advice	يعطي نصيحة	Do activities	يمارس انشطة
have a great time	يقضي وقت رائع	so happy to	سعيد جدا ان		
Take a boat trip	**يذهب في رحلة بالمركب**	**It's best to**	**من الافضل**	**take photos**	**يلتقط صور**
Try snorkelling	**يجرب رياضة الغوص**	much cheaper than	**اكثر رخصا من**		
wear sun cream	**يضع كريم واقي من الشمس**	try food	**يجرب طعاما**		
a lot to do	**الكثير لنفعله**	visit places	**يزور اماكن**		

Language Notes

Journey	رحله طويله	**trip**	رحلة قصيرة أو عمل	**flight**	رحله جوية
voyage	رحله بحرية	**picnic**	نزهه على الأقدام	**tour**	جوله سياحية

go	**play**	**do**

- **go + ing** رياضات تنتهي ب

go (fishing ,diving swimming, cycling, ice skating, snorkelling,) You can go snorkelling in Hurghado.

- **play +** رياضات تلعب بالكرة

play (football , hockey , tennis , volleyball, basketball, handball etc.) - You should be fit to play tennis.

- **do +** تاتي مع الرياضات العنيفة

do (karate/judo) He does karate in a famous club.

Sun	**Sunny**

نضيف حرف **(y)** للاسماء المتعلقة بالطقس لتكوين صفات

wind	windy	storm	stormy	cloud	cloudy

Definitions

Youth hostels	نزل للشباب	an inexpensive place where young people can stay when they are travelling
Bazaar	بازار	A market or a group of shops
windsurfing	ركوب الامواج	A sport you can do on water
snorkelling	الغطس	Swimming with equipment so that you can breathe with your head in water.
Tourist information centre	مركز المعلومات السياحية	An office where tourists can find out about a city or an area

Reading

SB 1

Dear Catherine,

I am so happy to hear that you and your family are visiting **Hurghada** in the spring! It is a **wonderful place** for a **holiday**. There is a lot to do and many different places to stay. You can **camp**, stay in a **hotel** or in the new **youth hostel**. It is very **modern** and **comfortable**, but much **cheaper** than the hotels. You can find out **information** at the **tourist information centre**. You should go there when you arrive. It is next to the police station in the middle of the new part of the city.

Hurghada has some beautiful **beaches**. When it is **windy**, you should definitely try **windsurfing**, too. Take a **boat trip** to the islands around Hurghada. You can go **scuba diving** or **snorkeling** . You can also go fishing from a boat.

You shouldn't walk too much in the sun. It is best to visit places early in the morning. Don't forget to go to the **bazaar** in the old part of the city. It is a good place to buy **souvenirs**.

Have a great time!

Salma

Classwork

I. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1 - The youth ..... is less expensive than a hotel.

a. house **b, part** **c. bazaar** **d. hostel**

2- We can go ..... when it is windy.

a. snorkelling **b. windsurfing** **c. shopping** **d. washing**

3- A..... is a market ore group of shops.

a. hotel **b. souvenir** **c. bazaar** **d. hostel**

4- You can breathe with your head in the water in .....

a. sailing **b. snorkelling** **c. windsurfing** **d. fishing**

5- Tourists go scuba ..... in Hurghado.

a. diving **b. swimming** **c. snorkelling** **d. fishing**

6- Tourist information ..... is an office where you can find out about a city or an area.

a. station **b. club** **c. centre** **d. street**

7- I bought some ..... to remember my visit to the Pyramids.

a. trips **b. prizes** **c. bazaars** **d. souvenirs**

8- In Hurghada, we took a boat ..... around the island,

a. flight **b. picnic** **c.trip** **d. walk**

9- This hotel is very ..... and comfortable, but it is very expensive.

a. old **b. bad** **c. modern** **d. dirty**

10- I can't try windsurfing because it isn't .....

a. rainy **b. windy** **c. sunny** **d. snowy**

Grammar

Giving advice تقديم النصيحة

فاعل Should + مصدر {الاثبات}

فاعل shouldn´t + مصدر {النفى}

* You **should go** now. The train goes in ten minutes.
* We **should wear** sun cream when it's very hot.
* You **shouldn't watch** too much television.

السؤال {Should +فاعل + مصدر}

¬**Omnya** : **Should** I **go** fishing with Sara?

Rana : **Yes**, you **should**. - **No**, you **shouldn't**.

اداة الاستفهام + Should +فاعل+ مصدر

- What should I do if I have a cold?
- You should go to the doctor.

should – shouldn´t بعد to نستخدم المصدر بدون

You should **get** up early.

should – shouldn´t بعد be – have – do لاحظ استخدام

- We should **be** more careful.
- Yossif should **have** his pen with him today.
- You should **do** your homework .

طرق اخري لتقديم النصيحة

- I advise you (not) to + inf.
- You had better (not) + inf.
- If I were you, I would (not) + inf.
* It is advisable for you to + inf.
- It's dangerous to + inf.
- It's a good idea (not) to + inf.
- It is important for.... (not) to + inf.

* If I were you, I'd study harder.
* I advise you not to smoke.
* You had better not watch too much TV.
* It's a good idea to visit your aunt today.
*It is important for Omar to eat well.
*It is advisable for you to work hard.

Rewrite تدريب

1- I advise you not to stay under the water for too long. **(shouldn't)**
- You shouldn't stay under the water for too long .

2- If I were you, I'd study hard. **(should)**
- You should study hard.

3 -It's dangerous to play with knives. **(shouldn't)**
- You shouldn't play with knives .

4- It's important to revise before the exam. **(should)**
- You should revise before the exam.

5- It's a good idea not to sleep late. **(shouldn't)**

- You shouldn't sleep late.

6- You had better get up early. **(should)**

- You should get up early.

Classwork

I. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1- You ..... go outside. It is raining.

a. should **b. shouldn't** **c. aren't** **d. haven't**

2- When you go diving, you should ..... people where you are going.

a. told **b. tells** **c. tell** **d. to tell**

3- Where..... next weekend?

o. should we to go b. should we go **c. should go we** **d. should we going**

4- Should we ..... Mr Mohamed El- Shaarawy today?

a. meeting **b. to meet** **c. met** **d. meet**

5- What should I ..... to get high marks?

a. do **b. did** **c does** **d. done**

6- ..... I wait for the rain to stop?

a.Have **b Are** **c. Should** **d. Were**

2- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- If I were you, I'd go to the doctor, (should)

2- I advise you not to look out for dangerous sharks. (shouldn't)

3- It's important to take the medicine to get well. (should)

4- Don't stay here for long. the bus is leaving soon. (shouldn't)

5- You should see a doctor. (I advise ..)

6- It's better for Ali to come early, (should)

7- You shouldn't smoke. (should)

8- You had better not look at the sun directly. (shouldn't)

HOMEWORK

I -Finish the following dialogue:

Salma and Sara are talking about the summer holiday.

Salma : Where are you going to spend your summer holiday?

Sara : (1) .....

Salma : Fantastic. Hurghada is a very nice place. (2) ..... ?

Sara : I'll go with my family.

Salma : How will you go there?

Sara : (3).....

Salma : (4).....?

Sara : We will stay in the city hotel.

Salma : I hope you will have a nice time there.

Sara : Thank you, Salma.

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1- You ..... go diving if the weather is bad.

a.should **b shouldn't** **c.must** **d.haven't**

2- You ,..... tell the teacher that you forgot to do your homework.

a.should **b. should to** **c. have** **d. are**

3- What should tourists…… when they visit your country?

a.see **b. seeing** **c. to see** **d. seen**

4- You should …… your pens with you in exams.

a.has **b. have** **c. had** **d. having**

5- I think you …… stop smoking.

a.shouldn't **b. haven't** **c. mustn't** **d. should**

6- You …… swim too far from your boat when you go diving.

a.shouldn't **b. should** **c. haven't** **d.aren't**

7- Snorkelling is swimming with breathing ……

a.equipment **b. stations** **c. machines** **d. centres**

8- We …… hostel is an inexpensive place where young people can stay.

a.Tourist **b. Youth** **c. Visitor** **d. Police**

9- Tourists can know everything at the…… information centre.

a. tourism **b. tower** **c. tourist** **d. tour**

10- We shouldn't walk too…… in the sun.

a many **b. few** **c. much** **d. lot**

3- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- My advice to you is to eat less bread to be fit. (***shouldn't***)

2- Sports are good for you. (***should***)

3- If I were you, I wouldn't go out today, (***shouldn't***)

4- It is important that tourists try some Egyptian food. (***should***)

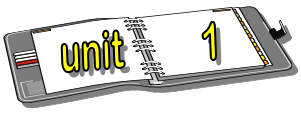
5- It's a good idea to call the police, (**should**)

4- Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences on one of the following:

1- What you should do to help your parents at home 2- Activities you can do in Hurghada

3- You tell your friend about different water sports

4-You tell your friend about your trip to Hurghada (a nice place for tourisits)



Visitors to Egypt

lessons 3 . 4 . 5

dolphin	دولفين	ticket	تذكرة	hungry	جائع
suggestions	اقتراحات	shopping	تسوق	count	يعد
question	سؤال	passport	جواز سفر	sound	صوت
crafts	مصنوعات يدوية	brochure	نشرة اعلانية	recommend	يوصى
assistant	مساعد	encourage	يشجع	tour	جولة
suggest	يقترح	traditional	تقليدى	directions	اتجاهات
guidebook	كتاب ارشادى	lunchtime	وقت الغداء	closed	مغلق
attractions	اماكن جذب	guide	مرشد	concert	حفل موسيقى
recommendations	توصيات	ancient sites	مواقع قديمة	lost	تاه
archaeologist	عالم اثار	actor	ممثل	possessions	ممتلكات
historical buildings		مبانى تاريخية		garden	حديقة

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
blow	تهب	blew	blown
find	يجد	found	found
know	يعرف	knew	known
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

CONFUSING WORDS

interested	مهتم	interesting	شيق
learn	يتعلم	teach	يدرس
weak	ضعيف	week	اسبوع
alone	بمفرده	lonely	وحيد
loaf	رغيف	leaf	ورقة شجر

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
closed	مغلق	open	مفتوح
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
famous	مشهور	unknown	غير معروف
weak	ضعيف	strong	قوي
warm	دافئ	cool	بارد
below	اسفل	above	فوق

PREPOSITION

pay for	يدفع ثمن	tell about	يخبر عن
walk away	يمشي بعيدا	in the summer	في الصيف
learn about	يتعلم عن	write down	يدون
go down	تغرب	in ten days	في خلال عشر ايام

Expression تعبيرات هامة

go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق	give recommendations	يقدم توصيات
that sounds good	هذا يبدو جيدا	have a good day	يقضي وقت جميل	take a break	يسترح
Visit (sites – a garden – a bazzar – a town- historical places)					يزور
Go (shopping – for awalk – on a tour – to a concert – into the country)					

Language Notes

Lose يفقد – يضيع شئ – ضال الطريق - **miss** يفوته شئ

I lost my pen. I will buy another one.
My friend was lost in the zoo last week.
I missed the bus, so I took a taxi.

• **brochure** نشرة • **guidebook** كتاب ارشادى

Tourist **brochures** encourage tourists to visit The Pyramids
I used a **guidebook** to get around London easily.

• **It's a / the** + صفة + اسم + **to** + **inf**

It's the best place to buy your food.
It's a good palce to swim.
What's the best palce to buy books.

• recommend يوصي • suggest يقترح • advise ينصح

- recommend + اسم - recommend (that) + فعل + فاعل - recommend + v-ing

I recommend a tour with a guide.
I recommend (that) you buy a guidebook.
I recommend going to the bazaar.

- suggest (that) + فاعل + فعل - suggest + v-ing

- I suggest (that) you visit the museum first.
- She suggested going shopping on Friday.

- advise (someone) to do (something) ينصح شخص بفعل شئ

- He advised me to visit Cairo.

Listening

SB 3

Tarek : Look father! Those tourists are lost.
Father : Yes, we should help them. Excuse me! Do you need any help?
Woman : Oh, thank you! We are looking for the tourists information Centre.
Father : It is not far from here, but it is closed today. Can we help you?
Man : Thank you ! It is our first trip to Egypt, you see. There is so much to see and do here. We don't know what to do first! We are interested in all the ancient sites and famous places. Where do you suggest we start?
Father : I suggest that you visit the museum. It is a good place to learn all about the things you will see at the ancient sites.
Woman : That is a good idea. When we are at ancient site, do you recommend a tour with a guide?
Father : That is a very good idea. The guides can tell you a lot of interesting things about a place. I also recommend you buy a guidebook. You can buy one at the tourist information centre tomorrow when it opens.
Man : Ok. We also want to go shopping. What is the best place to buy souvenirs? Do you recommend going to the bazaar?
Tarek : Yes, you should go to the bazaar in the old part of the city. There are lots of crafts to buy there.
Woman : That sounds good. Oh, one more thing . Is there a good place to eat near the museum? It is nearly lunchtime and we are really hungry.
Father : The best place to try traditional Egyptian food is the café opposite the museum… Have a good day.
Man : You too. Thank you very much!

Classwork

I. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1- Many tourists use a …… to Learn about a city's history and places to visit.
a. camera **b. bookshop** **c. guidebook** **d. ticket**
2- You should give tourist …… and draw them a map.
a attractions **b. directions** **c. shopping** **d. concerts**
3- You can buy …… at a bazaar.
a. crafts **b. food** **c. guides** **d. passports**

4- The ..... tourists thanked him for his help.

a. missed **b. lost** **c. opened** **d. made**

5. You need a ..... when you visit another country.

a. passport **b. tourist** **c. bazaar** **d. break**

6-The tourist information centre ..... good recommendation to the tourist.

a, carries **b. represents** **c. gives** **d. takes**

7- Nona ..... Leila to visit the Egyptian Museum.

a. went **b. advised** **c. Lost** **d. recommended**

8- Tourists like to visit ..... sites in Luxor.

a. modern **b. dirty** **c. empty** **d. ancient**

Language functions

Asking for recommendations طلب توصيات

- (اداة استفهام) do you suggest (فعل + فاعل)?

Where do you suggest we go for a holiday? What do you suggest we do to be better at English?

- Do you recommend (اسم – v+ing / فاعل + المصدر)

Do you recommend reading a book? Do you recommend we go swimming?

- What's the best (place – way) to + المصدر

What is the best way to learn English?

- Is there a good(place) to + المصدر

Is there a good place near Damietta?

Giving recommendations إعطاء توصيات

• I recommend+اسم /v+ing /فاعل+فعل

- I recommend you watch this TV programme; it's interesting.

• I suggests- V+ing ,فاعل+المصدر

- I suggest visiting our friend. All in hospital.

• The best (place) to المصدر ..... + is .....

- The best place to go shopping is Sanania Market

• You can+ المصدر

- You can buy a guidebook at the tourist information centre.

Accepting recommendations قبول التوصيات

• That's a good idea. • OK.

Classwork

Write what you would say in each of the following

1- A tourist asks you to recommend him / her a place to visit.

2- You recommend a new restaurant to a friend.

3-A tourist wants to know where to start his visit to Egypt.
4- You suggest going to the bazzar.
5- Your father suggests that you visit the museum.

HOMEWORK

1 -Finish the following dialogue:

Samir meets a tourist in Hurghada

Tourist : Excuse me! Can you help me?
Samir : Sure.
Tourist : ..(1).....
Samir : There are some good shops next to the market.
Tourist : OK! What's the best place to see dolphins?
Samir :..(2)..... is near the island
Tourist :...(3).....
Samir : At Grand Hotel, it's very comfortable.
Tourist :....(4).....

2-Write what you would say in each of the following

1- Your cousin asks you about the best kinds of films to watch.
2- You advise your sister to study well for her exams.
3- You recommend a good restaurant to your family to eat in.

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

Tourists of all nationalities like spending their holidays by seaside where they can enjoy themselves and escape from their daily routine. Among the well-known places is Hurghada. Tourists are lucky enough to go there. They like the sunny weather very much. Being on the Red Sea coast enables divers to enjoy snorkelling and scuba diving.

In addition to diving, tourists can do other water sports. **They** can water-ski, go sailing or go fishing. They live wonderful hours in the most beautiful city on the Red Sea.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- Where do tourists usually go for their holidays?
2- What can tourists do in Hurghada?
3- Where do you like spending your holiday?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The weather is ..... in Hurghoda.

a. snowy **b. rainy** **c. sunny** **d. cold**

5- The underlined word They refers to .....

a tourists **b. sports** **c. holidays** **d. seas**

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An..... is a person who helps in a shop or in a ticket office.

a) assistant **b) owner** **c) archaeologist** **d) actor**

2. If you do not know how to find a building, you can ask for..... '

a) discoveries **b) detectives** **c) directions** **d) diagram**

3. Many tourists use a ..... to learn about a city's history and places t

a) camera **b) bookshop** **c) guidebook** **d) ticket**

4. You need a ..... when you visit another country.

a) passport **b) tourist** **c) bazaar** **d) brochure**

5. The restaurant that your cousin told us about was a very good..... We lo'

a) recipe **b) recommendation** **c) souvenir** **d) sdvice**

6.I don't know how to get to your house. Can you give me……..?

a) activities **b) directions** **c) costumes** **d) conclusions**

7. The students usually stay in a youth…….. when they visit the city.

a) hotel **b) centre** **c) hostel** **d) office**

8. It's cold and windy today. When you go outside, you…….. a coat.

a) wear **b) should wear** **c) shouldn't wear** **d) are wearing**

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- I advise you not to be angry, **(shouldn't)**

2- You should sleep early, **(important)**

3-I suggest going to a sport club to be fit. **(should)**

4.When you goto Luxor, I think you should visit the museum, **(recommend)**

6-Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences on one of the following:

1- What you Like to do when you visit a beach 2- What tourists do when they visit Egypt

3 -What you should do to help your parents at home. 4- Why should we help tourists.

5- Why Egypt is a good place to visit. 6- A sport you like . 7- A visit to Hurghada.

E-mails

1 - To a pen friend who will come to Egypt, recommend him places to visit.

2- To your friend telling him about an ancient site you visited. - Your name is Nader

3- To your friend telling him about an exciting match you watched yesterday.

Books and reading

LESSONS 1, 2

reading	القراءة	page	صفحة	newspaper	جريدة
story	قصة	amount	كمية	the police	الشرطة
interest	الاهتمام	popular	شعبي	fact	حقيقة
schoolwork	عمل مدرسي	solve	يحل	second	ثانية
detective	مخبر – محقق	tourist	سائح	Antarctic	القارة القطبية
problem	مشكلة	during	اثناء	noisy	مزعج
review	مقالة نقدية	spider	عنكبوت	soil	تربة
title	عنوان	language	لغة	exciting	مثير
number	عدد	weigh	يزن	pharaohs	الفراعنة
traveling	السفر	Korean	كوري	air	هواء
historical stories		قصص تاريخية		sleep	ينام

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
say	يقول	said	said
read	يقرأ	read	read
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk

كلمات متشابهة

review	مقالة	View	منظر طبيعي
title	عنوان	headline	عنوان رئيسي
Some time	بعض الوقت	sometimes	احيانا
quiet	هادئ	quite	الي حدما

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
useful	مفيد	useless	غير مفيد
popular	شائع	unpopular	غير شائع
Fewer- less	اقل	more	اكثر
countable	معدود	uncountable	غير معدود
deep	عميق	shallow	ضحل

Definitions

detective	محقق	someone who helps the police in their work
title	عنوان	the name given to a book, play.
review	مقالة نقدية	writing which gives your opinion about a book or film

PREPOSITION

at home	في المنزل	On the bus	في الاتوبيس
at school	في المدرسة	wait for	ينتظر
on the road	علي الطريق	amount of	كمية من

Expression تعبيرات هامة

solve problems	يحل مشكلة	**spend** time	يقضي وقت
have an interest in	لديه اهتمام	enjoy reading	يستمتع بالقراءة
recommend a book	يوصي بقراءة كتاب	take time	يستغرق وقت
have schoolwork	لديه اعمال مدرسية		

Language Notes

historic	historical	historian

- **historic** تاريخي (ذو اهمية تاريخية)

(day- palace - castle -building)

- **historical** تاريخي مرتبط بدراسة الماضي او التاريخ

(story - book - film)

Historical stories tell us about the past. The Great Pyramid is a historic building.

historian مؤرخ

My cousin is a historian, he studies history.

a book	• book

- **a book** كتاب I took a book with me to read on the train.
- **book** يحجز I have booked a single room at a hotel.

Reading

SB 6

Tarek : I have some time before my next lesson. Let's choose a book to read.
Omar : There are lots of **historical stories** here, but there are few **detective stories**.
Tarek : That is because detective stories are more **popular**, aren't they? People like trying to solve the problems before the detective. People have less interest in historical stories.
Omar : Detective stories are too long. I have little time to read this year because I have more schoolwork. So I want a book with fewer pages than a detective story.
Tarek : This book has the fewest number of pages and will take you the least amount of time to read.
Omar : Tarek , that book is about travelling, isn't it?
Tarek : True! This is good. Its title is Ten Facts about the World.
Omar : I read a review of that book. It said it was very good. I will read that!

Classwork

I. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1- This is a ..... story about the Pharaohs in ancient Egypt.
a. historic **b. historical** **c. historian** **d. history**

2- A/An ..... helps the police in their work.
a. teacher **b. farmer** **c. architect** **d. detective**

3- The ..... of the book you are using is New Hello!
a. title **b. address** **c. headline** **d. review**

4- The ..... in the newspaper says that this film is very exciting.
a. view **b. review** **c. viewer** **d. interview**

5- She's really good at ..... problems.
a. breaking **b. spending** **c. running** **d. solving**

6- Detective stories ore ..... Everyone likes them.
a. unpopular **b. popular** **c. useless** **d. bad**

7 - People try to solve the ..... before the detective.
a. books **b. stories** **c. problems** **d. reviews**

8- Seif has a/an ..... in computer games.
a. litre **b interest** **c.fact** **d. title**

9-It's a..... that we all breathe oxygen.
a. fact **b. trip** **c. time** **d. history**

10- The photo was on the front ..... of all the newspapers.
a. book **b. story** **c. page** **d. title**

Grammar

Countable and uncountable nouns الاسماء التى تعد و التى لا تعد

الاسم الذى يعد له مفرد و له جمع و ياتى قبله A / an

* a boy ---- boys * an orange------- oranges * a man ------ men

الاسم الذى لا يعد مفردا دائما و ليس له جمع

Water, news, oil, milk, money, cheese, tea, meat.

هناك اسماء تستخدم كاسماء معدودة و غير معدودة بمعان مختلفة

Glass زجاج a glass كوب paper ورق a paper جريدة

Iron حديد an iron مكواة wood خشب a wood غابة صغيرة

Comparing quantities مقارنة الكميات

	Adjective الصفة	Comparatives المقارنة	Superlatives التفضيل
Countable nouns للاسماء التى تعد	A lot of كثير من Many كثير من	More than اكثر من	The most الاكثر
	Few قليل	Fewer than اقل من	The fewest الاقل
Uncountable nouns للاسماء التى لا تعد	A lot of كثير من Much كثير من	More than اكثر من	The most الاكثر
	Little قليل	Less than اقل من	The least الاقل

Examples

1- Hadi has got **more money than** Ashraf.
2- Soha has got **less water than** Jehan.
3- Samy has got **the least sugar**.
4- I have got **more books than** Yasser.
5- Karim has got **fewer pens than** Galal.
6- Shady has **the fewest pencils**.

مقارنة الصفات

Comparative adjectives

هناك نوعان من الصفات

1 صفة قصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد) tall, short, fat, thin , big , small

2 صفة طويلة (اكثر من مقطع) expensive, interesting , useful, exciting

للمقارنة بين اثنين مع الصفات القصيرة than + er + الصفة)

Examples

1- Emad is taller than Adel.
2- Ola is shorter than Mona.

صيغة التفضيل (اكثر من اثنين) **the** + الصفة + **est**

1- Tamer is the tallest boy in our class.
2- Lions are the strongest animals.

لاحظ الصفة المنتهية بـــ **(e)** نضيف **(r)** فقط **(est)**

nice nicer nicest

الصفة التى تنتهى بحرف متحرك ثم حرف ساكن نضاعف الحرف الاخير ثم نضيف **(er)(est)**

Hot hotter hottest **big bigger biggest**

الصفة المنتهية بـــ **(y)** تحول الى **(ier)** **(iest)**

heavy heavier heaviest

هنالك صفات شاذة

good	better than	the best
bad	worse than	the worst
ill	worse than	the worst
far	farther than	the farthest
little	less	the least
many-much	more than	the most

المقارنة فى الصفات الطويلة

more اكثر
less اقل
+ الصفة + than

Examples

1- Football is more popular than swimming.
2- Weight lifting is less interesting than handball.

التفضيل (اكثر من اثنين)

the most الاكثر
the least الاقل
+ الصفة

Examples

1- Football is the most exciting sport.
2- Judo is the least interesting sport.

as + الصفة + as	فى حالة التساوى

Akram is as tall as Galal.
She is as beautiful as her mother.

Little / Few قليل لا يكفى معنى سلبى	a little / a few قليل يكفى معنى ايجابى

Karim has **few** friends, so he feels lonely. There were **a few** books but we could follow the teacher.
He has **little** money to spend this week , He saves **a little** money every week. .

The number of ……	Few	fewer	the fewest	مع الاسماء المعدودة الجمع
	pages	desks	books	people

The amount of ……	little	less	the least	مع الاسماء المعدودة الجمع
	time	interest	bread	water

Rewrite تدريب

1- All the students have **more** books **than** Hany. **(the fewest)**
- Hany has **the fewest** books.
2- Malak has **the fewest** dresses in the family, **(fewer)**
-Molok has **fewer** dresses **than** all girts in the family.
3- Rana has **more** money **than** Arwa. **(less)**
- Arwa has **less** money **than** Rana.
4. **Not many** people came to the party. **(Few)**
-**Few** people came to the party.
5- Karim has **five** books. Islam has **three** books, (fewer)
- Islam has **fewer** books **than** Karim.
6-Omar ate **150 gram** of rice. I ate only **100 grams**, (less)
- I ate **less** rice **than** Omar.

Classwork

I. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1- The …… number of tourists visit the museum early in the morning.
a. few **b. fewer** **c. fewest** **d. Least**
2- The fly has …… legs than the P.
a.less **b. fewer** **c. Little** **d. few**
3-I think Friday has the …… **number of cars** on **the** road.
a.fewest **b. least** **c. many** **d. few**
4- …… people think that English isn't a useful language.
a. Much **b.Little** **c. Less** **d.Few**
5- I have …… time to read this year because I have more schoolwork.
a.few **b. little** **c. least** **d. fewer**
6.This book will take you …… amount of time to read.
a. fewer **b. the least** **c. the fewest** **d. few**

2- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Not many people like historical novels. **(Few)**
2- I would like to read a detective story but I don't have much time. **(little)**
3- Allthe students in the class have 5 books each, but Yasser has only 3 books, **(the fewest)**
4- Rahma has more books in her bag than Nadine . **(fewer)**
5- I don't have as much interest in adventure stories as I do in mysteries. **(less)**
6- Haneen brough less beef than Sara and Mariam yesterday. **(least)**

Homework

I. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1- Students often have …… sleep during school time than during the holidays.
a. few **b. fewer** **c. less** **d. many**
2- The Antarctic is the place in the world that has the …… rain
a. fewest **b. Least** **c. less** **d. little**
3-I want a book with …… pages than a detective story.
a. few **b little** **c. fewer** **d. fewest**
4- There is …… butter on my plate than on yours.
a fewer **b. few** **c. less** **d. least**
5- Tarek has got …… friends in his class.
a. the fewest **b. the least** **c. Less** **d. much**
6- There are …… detective stories in the Library.
a. less **b.few** **c. little** **d.much**
7- Children are bored with having a lot of …… this term.
a. invitations **b.schoolwork** **c. school day** **d. hobbies**
8-Very …… people have travelled to the deepest part of the sea.
a. little **b.much** **c.few** **d. fewer**
9- She eats a great…… **of food,**
a. mountain **b. price** **c. amount** **d. fact**
10- What kind of book does Tarek …… to Omar to read?
a solve **b. recommend** **c. weigh** **d. use**

2- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Not many people have got private planes. **(Few)**
2- All the bottles have more juice than the red bottle, **(the Least)**
3- The hotel was noisy so the tourists didn't sleep well last night. **(little sleep)**
4- Zeyad doesn't have much time on Thursday as he has on Friday. **(less)**
5- Naira has more friends thon Menna. **(fewer)**
6- I spend less time at home on Mondays than all the other days. **(the least)**
7- Hala eats the least meat in our family, **(less)**
8- Ahmed has more books than Seif has. **(Seif.....)**
9. Salma's bottle has more water than Mona's bottle, **(less)**
10. I would like to play computer games, but I don't have much time. **(little)**
11. Adel read more stories than Yasser. **(fewer)**

3-Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- a story you like most 2- a visit to the school library

·Write an email on one of the following:

1- To your cousin about reading. 2- To your friend about a kind of story you like. Your name is Adham

Books and reading

LESSONS 3. 4. 5

excited	مثار	driving test	اختبار قيادة	alone	بمفرده
adventure stories		قصص مغامرة		describe	يصف
character	شخصية	summary	يلخص	description	وصف
realise	يدرك	beauty	جمال	mysteries	قصص الغموض
die	يموت	leaves	اوراق الشجر	last	يستمر
wind	رياح	towards	تجاه	frightened	خائف
obroad	خارج البلاد	carer	قائم بالرعاية	expert	خبير
tremble	يهتز - يرتعش	novel	رواية	different	مختلف
weak	ضعيف	squire	شخص اقطاعي	writer	كاتب
living things	كائنات حية	light	مصباح	troubles	متاعب
tired	مرهق	sailor	بحار	wonderful	رائع
finally	اخيرا	clever	ماهر	pass	يجتاز
retun	يعود	valley	وادي	enjoyable	ممتع

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
think	يقول	thought	thought
blow	تهب	blew	blown
know	يعرف	knew	known
teach	يدرس	taught	taught
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
find	يجد	found	found
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
shake	يهز	shook	shaken

كلمات متشابهة

die	يموت	dye	صبغة
desert	صحراء	dessert	☐تحلية
loaves	ارغفة عيش	leaves	☐ورق شجر
below	☐اسفل	blow	☐ نهب

Word	☐كلمة	Opposite	☐عكسها
right	صواب	wrong	خطأ
dangerous	خطير	safe	أمن
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف

Definitions

character	شخصية	a person in a book, play, film, etc.
summary	ملخص	writing that gives the main information about something
Carer	قائم بالرعاية	helps people who are old
Adventure	مغامرة	something unusual, exciting and maybe dangerous
tremble	يهتز	shake a little when you are afraid, worried or excited
Novel	رواية	a long story that is written
Weak	ضعيف	not strong

PREPOSITION

on the trees	علي الشجر	At a farm	في مزرعة
grow up	يكبر في السن	write down	يدون
look after	يعتني بـ	go down	تغرب الشمس

Expression تعبيرات هامة

Stay warm	يبقي دافئ	**make friends**	يكون صداقات
Feel frightened	يشعر بالخوف	one of his homes	احدى اوطانه
Scary film	فيلم رعب	nineteenth-century	القرن التاسع عشر
The man with the light	الرجل الذي لديه مصباح		

Language Notes

Suffixes نهايات الكلمات

root اصل الكلمة	— er	— ful	— ly
Use يستخدم	user مستخدم	useful مفيد	usefully بطريقة مفيدة

- feel • fall • fill • fail

feel (felt-felt) يشعر -My parents fed happy because I passed the exam.
fall (fell-fallen) يقع -In autumn, the leaves start to fall.
fill (filled-filled) يملأ -He filled the glass with water.
fail (ed) يفشل -He failed the test because he didn't study hard.

• quite • quiet • quit

quite الي حد ما - I think English is quite dificuilt.
quiet هادئ - Keep quiet please. The baby is asleep.
quit يترك -I don't know why she quit her job.

Reading

SB 8

The trees are the first living things that Hassan has seen in five days. The Wind is blowing and the leaves on the trees are trembling, like him. He is tired and weak.

A few hours before he arrived here, Hassan thought he was going to die. There was no food in the desert and he knew that the little water he had would not last another day.

Now he knows that he will find water, because if there are trees, there must be water somewhere. But he still doesn't know where he is. How far is it to the nearest road, where he might find help?

The sun is going down quickly and he knows it will be cold for the next eight hours. How can he stay warm for another night in the desert?

Suddenly, he sees something. Someone is carrying a light towards him. He realizes that it is a man. Finally, help has arrived. He is safe.

Listening

SB 8

Nadia : Did you like the end of the story?

Salma : I am not sure I understand it. Who is the man with the light? And why does it say that the leaves are trembling? people usually tremble when they feel excited or frightened, not leaves.

Nadia : Hassan is trembling because he is tired and week. He has been in the desert for five days. I don't think the writer is saying that the leaves feel frightened when the wind comes, but they are moving in the same way as Hassan because he is so tired.

Salma : How did you feel when Hassan finally saw the trees?

Nadia :It made me feel excited! You know that he will find some water because there are trees there, and they need water. We know that he won't die.

Salma :I think it is clever because we think that he will be alone in the desert for another night, but then he sees the light.

Nadia :Why do you think there is a man with a light?

Salma : I think that it is his friend Ahmed . Ahmed knew that Hassan was going in the desert and we know that Ahmed knows the desert very well. So Hassan is safe now.

Nadia :Yes, I think you are right.

Salma : How do you feel about the story now?

Nadia : I feel quite happy! I like adventure stories like this.

Reading

SB 9

"Black Beauty" by Anna Sewell

"Black Beauty" is a story about a black horse in nineteenth- century England. The horse tells the story of his life which began at a farm. Black Beauty's mother teaches him to be a good horse. Farmer Grey is very kind and Black Beauty is happy. When Black Beauty is four, Farmer Grey sells him to Squire Gordon. Black Beauty makes friends with other horses and the quire looks after them very well.

Unfortunately, the squire moves abroad and Black Beauty is sold to different people. Some people are very unkind. One of his them is very bad. Black Beauty has many adventures before he finally finds a good home again.

Reading

WB 6

Daniel Defoe

You have heard of the writer, Daniel Defoe, haven't you? One of my favourite novels by Daniel Defoe is a book called Robinson Crusoe. It is about a boy who wants to become a sailor. When he grows up, he travels to many countries and has many adventures . His boat Sinks and he lices for many years on an island. I liked the description of how he finds food and a place to live. Finally, Crusoe meets some other people and returns to England. Some of the story made me feel sad, but at the end I felt happy. It was a very enjoyable story and the characfers are wonderful

Classwork

-Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d:

1- When the wind is blowing, the Leaves of the trees are ……

a. carrying **b. trembling** **c. passing** **d. speaking**

2- If a person feels……, he is not strong.

a happy **b.sad** **c. weak** **d.safe**

3- A/An ……is something unusual, exciting and maybe dangerous

a. summary **b. review** **c. titte** **d. adventure**

4. Animals, plants and insects are all……things.

a. died **b. living** **c.bad** **d. dirty**

5- In autumn, the …… on the trees begin to fall.

a. soil **b. branches** **c.leaves** **d. fruit**

6. If someone is…… he is shaking very hard.

a. sleeping **b. trembling** **c. eating** **d. reading**

7. If I see a large snake, I feel……

a. happy **b.lazy** **c. frightened** **d. hungry**

8. What happened was not a……It was clear to all. Everyone expected it.

a. summary **b. mystery** **c. character** **d. century**

LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS

Asking about feelings السؤال عن المشاعر

Did the (story) make you feel (frightened / happy)?
How did you feel when (…when you saw a lion..)
How did you feel about the (story) now?

Expressing feelings التعبير عن المشاعر

I feel / felt ……. (worried / quite happy).
It made me feel(excited / happy).
I don't feel (sad).

Classwork

. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You are asked about your feelings when you win a prize.
2. You see a snake.
3. Your team scored a goal.
4. Express how you feel when your class wins the competition.
5. You saw a horrible film.

Homework

1 · Finish the following dialogue:

Hazem and Munir are talking about the film they watched yesterday

Hazem : Did you enjoy yesterday's film ?
Munir : No, I didn't understand it.
Hazem : (1)..... ?
Munir : Some of it did. It also made me feel sad.
Hazem : How did you feel when Ahmed returned from the desert ?
Munir : (2)..... Why was Taha so excited to see
Hazem : (3) ..... He last saw him ten years
Munir : I didn't know that he was his brother.
Hazim : ...(4).....?
Munir : It's a good idea to watch the next film.

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- A friend asks you what you thought of the accident.
2- You ask your friend about his feelings after he passes the final exam.
3- Your friend feels frightened towards a film, but you feel quite happy.

3 -Read the following, then answer the questions:

Once upon a time, a boy called Andrew lived in London. Andrew loved history and he always read about old and ancient places. He learnt that the power of the past can change present. One day he came across an ancient book that was about Egypt. Andrew was surprised of it. He saw and learnt many great things about this country so he decided to visit it. Andrew prepared a list of the places that he wanted to see and visit. He also met an Egyptian boy while chatting on the internet. Both were so happy. When arriving in Egypt, Andrew didn't stay in his hotel and went to all the places in his list. He was extremely happy when he went to Luxor and visited all the temples there. He called **it** "The ancient city". Reading helped Andrew to know about new places in the world.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- Why didn't Andrew stay in hotels when he arrived in Egypt?
2- How do you think Andrew feel now? Why?
3- Which country is the passage referring to?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined pronoun it refers to .....

a. Egypt **b. Luxor** **c.London** **d.Reading**

5- The word "ancient" means .....

a.modern **b.bad** **c. very old** **d. expensive**

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d:

1. The teacher asked us to write a …… for our visit to the museum in seven lines.

a. character **b. title** **c. conclusion** **d. description**

2. Does this novel …… you feel frightened ?

a. take **b. get** **c. make** **d. have**

3. There is…… juice in the fridge. I'll buy some.

a. much **b. little** **c. few** **d. more**

4. Our class has the …… pupils at school.

a. few **b. little** **c. fewest** **d. least**

5. What kind of books does Tarek…… to Omar ?

a. comment **b. command** **c. recommend** **d. revise**

6. What is the…… time you have taken to do a puzzle ?

a. little **b. fewest** **c. least** **d.few**

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- My house has more rooms than yours, (fewer)

2-I recommend visiting Alexandria in summer, (advise)

3- Girls are fewer than boys in our class, (more)

4- I don't have as much interest in adventure stories as I do in mysteries, (less)

5- Samy has less bread than all his friends, (the least)

6- Rodayna has more books in her bag than Malak. (fewer)

Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- an adventure story you have just read

2 - your favourite Egyptian writer

3 - A story you have just read

4- A situation made you feel happy

Festivals and special days

LESSONS 1, 2

festival	احتفال	spring	الربيع	special	خاص
article	مقال	month-long	ممتد طدة شهر	thousands	الاف
celebrate	يحتفل	fantastic	رائع	picnic	نزهة
hundreds	مئات	jam	مربي	usual	عادي
without	بدون	cupboard	دولاب	activities	انشطة
coat	معطف	pan	اناء	website	موقع علي النت
represent	يشير الى	across	عبر	start	يبدأ
appear	يظهر	invent	يخترع	sign	علامة
Canberra	كانبرا	Australia	استراليا	free	حر - مجاني
main	اساسي	freezer	فريزر	papyrus	البردي
sweets	حلوى	nearly	تقريبا	the country	الريف
Sham el-Nessim	شم النسيم	Zenica	زينيستا	Bosnia	البوسنة

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
freeze	يتجمد	froze	frozen
catch	يمسك	caught	caught
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
pay	يدفع مال	paid	paid
give	يعطى	gave	given
hold	يقيم	held	held

كلمات متشابهة

pan	وعاء,	ban	يمنع
in a way	بطريقة	on the way	على الطريق
represent	يدل علي	present	هدية
country	دولة	the country	الريف

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
inside	داخل	outside	خارج
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
free	مجانى	paid	مدفوع
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفى

Definitions

free	مجانى	without having to pay any money
special	خاص	better or more important than usual
festival	مهرجان	an important day with lots of activities
represent	يدل على	be a sign for something
celebrate	يحتفل	enjoy activities on an important day

PREPOSITION

Go into	يدخل الى	For free	مجانا
a sign for	اشارة الى	on a day	فى يوم
In spring	فى الربيع	Listen to	يستمع ل
across the country	فى انحاء الريف	appear on	يظهر على

Expression تعبيرات هامة

Have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	have a festival	يقيم مهرجان
A month-long festival	مهرجان لمدة شهر	all over the world	فى جميع انحاء العالم
Far away	بعيد جدا	**was first held**	اقيم لاول مرة

Language Notes

• **food** الطعام (لا تجمع) • **foods** اطعمة (انواع من الطعام)

We should eat healthy **food**. We usually have different **foods** in Ramadan.

• **festival** مهرجان • **celebration** احتفال • **feast** عيد (دينى) • **day**(مناسبة) يوم

-In Bosnia, people have festival of eggs in spring.
-We planned o special celebration for his success.
-Al Adha is a Muslim feast.
- Mother's Day عيدالام-Christmas Day الكريسماس - Labour Day عيد العمال

• **a hundred / a thousand / a million +** اسم جمع
:• You can see a thousand flowers in the park.
" hundreds / thousands / millions of + اسم جمع
In the festival, hundreds of eggs are cooked in a big pan.

Reading

SB 11

Spring Festivals

Spring is celebrated in different ways all over the world. It is a very special time of the year. In Egypt, Sham el-Nessim was first held to celebrate the start of spring nearly 4,000 years ago. In Japan, people celebrate when small flowers first appear on thousands of trees across the country. People go outside and have picnics under the trees with their friends and family.

In the town of Zenica in Bosnia, people have a festival of eggs in spring. Hundreds of eggs are cooked in a big pan for breakfast and these are given to all the people of the town for free.

In Australia, the start of spring is celebrated in September! In the city of Canberra, there is a month-long flower festival to celebrate spring. You can see about a million beautiful flowers in the city's main park, and you can also listen to music.

Why do so many countries celebrate spring? The flowers and eggs all represent the new life that we can start to enjoy after the winter months have ended.

Classwork

I. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1- Sham el-Nessim is a …… day for all of us.
a. free **b. usual** **c. special** **d.sad**

2-He gave her a flower as a …… of love.
a. sign **b. pan** **c. sight** **d. day**

3-A / An …… is an important day with lots of activities.
a. article **b. festival** **c. sign** **d. website**

4- Sham el-Nessim the start of spring.
a presents **b. represents** **c. sends** **d. excludes**

5- People of Zenica used…… to cook hundreds of eggs.
a.papyrus **b. coats** **c. parks** **d. pans**

6- Spring is celebrated…… different ways.
a. in **b. on** **c. to** **d. at**

7-The life in is very quiet and safe.
a. country **b. countries** **c.a country** **d. the country**

8- If something is …… that means it is better or more important than usual.
a.special **b. careful** **c. private** **d. free**

Grammar

present and past simple Passive المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط في المبنى للمجهول

1 – نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون الفاعل مجهولا اوعندما يكون الفعل او الحدث هو الاهم وجملة المبنى للمعلوم هي التى تبدأ بالفاعل وجملة المبنى للمجهول تبدأ بالمفعول

2 – المضارع البسيط هو المصدر بدون أي اضافات اذا جاء الفاعل I – we – you – they او اسم جمع ويتكون من المصدر مضاف اليه s – es – ies اذا جاء الفاعل He – she – it أو اسم مفرد

- They watch TV every Friday.
- He sometimes plays football.
- She always studies hard.

3 – يتم نفي المضارع البسيط باستخدام كل من (مصدر + don't – doesn't)

- They don't like ice-cream.
- She doesn't write English.

4 – الماضي البسيط هو التصريف الثاني للفعل اي المصدر مضاف اليه d – ed – ied مع وجود أفعال شاذة

- She studied her lessons yesterday.
- Last week, he went to the library.

5 – يتم نفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (مصدر + didn't)

- He didn't go to school.
- They didn't buy the books.

6 – المضارع البسيط في المبنى للمجهول(PASSIVE) يتكون كالآتـــى : –

مفعـول + am – is – are + P.P

- Ali plays football. (active)
- Football is palyed by Ali. (passive)
- They take the bus every day. (active)
- The bus is taken by them . (passive)

7 – الماضي البسيط في المبنى للمجهول (PASSIVE) يتكون كالآتـــى : –

مفعـول + was – were + P.P

- She cooked lunch. (Active)
- Lunch was cooked.
- Ali wrote the e-mails. (Active)
- The e-mails were written.

8 – اذا جاءت الجمله منفية بـ (don't – doesn't – didn't) يتم حذفهم عند التحويل ونضع (not)

- He doesn't eat meat.
- Meat isn't eaten.
- I didn't send the e-mail.
- The e-mail wasn't sent.

9 – في حالة السؤال يكون المبنى للمجهول كالاتى:

مضارع ---------- Am - Is-Are + مفعول + P . P
ماضي ---------- Was – Were + مفعول + P .P

- Are special foods eaten in Egypt?
- Was this toy bought yesterday?

10 – أما في حالة السؤال الذي يبدأ بأداة استفهام يكون الشكل كالآتـي : –

اداة استفهام + am – is – are – was – were + مفعول + P.P ?

- Why do people keep fish in the fridge? (Active)
- Why is fish kept in the fridge? (Passive)
- When did Ali write the letter? (Active)
- When was the letter written? (Passive)

11 – ضمائر الفاعل يتم تحويلها الى ضمائر مفعول كالآتـي : –

I	me
He	him
She	her
It	it
We	us
You	you
They	them

12 – إذا كان بالجملة فعل مساعد can-could – shall – should – will – would – may – might- must

مفعـول + فعل مساعد(will) + be + P.P

I will buy a new car. A new car will be bought.

13 – إذا كان الفاعل غير معروف مثل (people – someone- everyone-everybody) لا نستخدم ... by +

Someone took my bag yesterday. My bag was taken yesterday.

Rewrite تدريب

1- The mechanic **mended** my car yesterday, **(by)**
My car **was mended** by the mechanic yesterday.
2- My mother **cleans** the kitchen every day. **(is cleaned)**
The kitchen **is cleaned** by my mother every day.
3 I **bought** a new bike yesterday **(A new bike)**
A new bike **was bought** (by me) yesterday.

Classwork

I. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1. Spring ..... in different ways all over the world.
a. celebrates **b. is celebrated** **c. celebrated** **d. celebrate**
2. Who was the first pizza..... by ?
a. invent **b. inventing** **c. invented** **d. invents**
3. Sweets..... to children at New Year today.
a. are given **b. is given** **c. gave** **d. give**
4. Is jam..... in that cupboard ?
a.keeping **b. keeps** **c. kept** **d.keep**
5. Hundreds of eggs..... in a big pan.
a. cooked **b. cooking** **c. cooks** **d. are cooked**
6. How ..... Mother's Day always celebrated in your family ?
a. are **b. is** **c. been** **d. were**

2- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Children eat cheese for breakfast, (is)
2. Did Rami do his homework ? (Was .....?
3. People wear coats in winter, (worn)
4. The Pharaohs built the Pyramids in the past. (were)

Homework

I. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1. Sham el-Nessim was first..... to celebrate the start of spring nearly 4,000 years ago.

a. hold **b. held** **c. holding** **d. holds**

2. Boiled eggs..... for breakfast.

a. is eaten **b. ate** **c. eats** **d. are eaten**

3. The Pyramids..... thousands of years ago.

a. building **b. are built** **c. were built** **d. builds**

4- In Bosnia, eggs ..... in a big pan.

a.cook **b. are cooked** **c. is cooked** **d. are cooking**

5- Yesterday, my money ..... in the market.

a.was stealing **b. stole** **c. is stolen** **d. was stolen**

6- What..... papyrus first used forlong ago?

a.were **b. is** **c. was** **d. are**

7- The story was heard by .....

a.them **b. they** **c. their** **d. theirs**

8- Why is fish sometimes ..... in special freezers?

- keeps **b.keep** **c.keeping** **d. kept**

9- That programme ..... on channel 2.

a. shown **b. shows** **c. was shown** **d. showed**

10- Oranges ..... in hot countries.

a. is grown **b. are grown** **c. are grow** **d. growing**

2- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- My parents gave me new clothes for Eid al-Fitr. (New clothes)
2- In Australia, people celebrate the start of spring in September. (The start of spring)
3- Who invented the first pizza? (was)
4. Cakes were eaten by my friends, (ate)
5 - People give sweets to children at New Year today. (given)
6- Dad bought a mobile when he was in Alexandria. (A mobile ..)
7- How do people celebrate New Year in China? (celebrated)
8- Mr Hassan didn't buy a computer yesterday. (A computer
9- Yesterday, Hassan ate cheese at dinner. (Cheese)
10- My dad read the novel in one day. (by)
11- My mother might clean my room today, (be)
12- Can you revise the lesson today? (revised)

3 Write an email on one of the following:

1 - To your friend Nagy on a special day - Your name is Maher.

2- How are eggs prepared in Sham el-Nessim

Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

1 - spring festivals in Japan

2 - your favourite festival of the year

Festivals and special days

LESSONS 3. 4 . 5

neighbours	جيران	huge	ضخم	fill	يملأ
natural colours		الوان طبيعية		lion costumes	ازياء علي شكل وجه اسد
Thanksgiving Day		عيد الشكر			
New Year's Day	عيد راس السنة	boil	يغلي	prepare	يجهز
paper lantern	فانوس ورقي	decorate	يزين	date back to	يعود الي زمن
parade	موكب	preserve	يحفظ	midnight	منتصف الليل
feseekh	فسيخ	dried fish	سمك مجفف	period	فترة زمنية
relatives	اقارب	envelope	ظرف	electricity	كهرباء
competition	مسابقة	serve	يقدم طعام	congratulations	تهانينا
balloon	بلونة	Eid-al-Fitr	عيد الفطر	boiled eggs	بيض مسلوق
fireworks	العاب نارية	midday	الظهيرة	costume	زي مناسبة
season	فصل	traditional	تقليدي	bright	لامع
so that	لكي	dress up	يرتدي زي رسمي	tradition	تقليد
breeze	نسيم	BCE	قبل الميلاد	Fresh air	هواء منعش

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
stand	يقف	stood	stood
sweep	يكنس	swept	swept
leave	يغادر	left	left
mean	يعني	meant	meant
smell	يشم	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled

كلمات متشابهة

breeze	نسيم	breathe	يتنفس
paint	يلون	draw	☐يرسم
lantern	فانوس	lamp	☐مصباح
along	☐بطول	a long	شئ طويل
costumes	☐ازياء	clothes	☐ملابس

Word	☐كلمة	Opposite	☐عكسها
huge	ضخم	tiny	ضئيل
young	صغير	old	عجوز
good	جيد	bad	سئ

Definitions

lanterns	فوانيس	We use them to see at night
breeze	نسيم	a weak wind
Traditional	تقليدى	something has been done for a long period of time
midnight	منتصف الليل	the minute after 11.59 pm
customes	ازياء	clothes that we wear for special days

PREPOSITION

Fill with	يملأ بـ	At Sham el-Nessim	في شم النسيم
At midnight	في منتصف الليل	Dried with	يجفف بـ
Last for	يدوم لمدة	Decorate with	يزين بـ
First of all	قبل كل شئ	Envelope with money	ظرف به مال

Expression تعبيرات هامة

Say congratulations	يقول مبروك	smell the breeze	يشم النسيم

Language Notes

• **at night** فى الليل • **on the night...** فى ليلة معينة

Stars appear in the sky at night.
I always prepare my bag on the night before a school day.

• **tradition** تقليد • **traditional** تقليدى • **traditionally** تقليديا

Eating feseekh is an Egyptian tradition in Sham el-Neseem.
My grandfather is still having traditional ideas.
Traditionally, boiled eggs are eaten in Sham el-Nessim.

• **colour** لون – يلون • **coloured** ملون • **colourful** غنى بالالوان

What's your favourite colour?
The child have many coloured balloons.
People wear colourful costumes in that festival.

Listening

SB 13

My name is Li. I am from China. My favourite festival is New Year. It lasts for about eight days. It is the most important festival for Chinese people and we start preparing for it a week before it starts. First of all, we clean our houses. We sweep and wash all the floors, doors and windows. Next, we decorate our homes with red paper lanterns. Afterwards, many people go shopping for new clothes.

There is always a special meal on the night before New Year's Day. Relatives come from far away to join their families. Lots of special New Year food is eaten, but the most important food is usually fish. Dinner is usually eaten at home, not often in a restaurant. After dinner, children are given red envelopes with some money inside by their parents. At midnight, there are fireworks and the sky is filled with colour and noise.

The next morning, on the first day of the new year, we wear our new clothes and say congratulations to our friends and neighbours. Traditionally, young people visit older people to say Happy New Year to them. At midday, there are parades where people dress up in colourful costumes. Some people wear huge lion costumes, too.

Reading

SB 14

SHAM EL-NESSIM

* Sham el-Nessim means smelling the breeze and it is celebrated all over Egypt On a Monday in April or May. The festival started in about 2700 BCE. The ancient Egyptian year had three seasons and Sham el-Nessim was held to celebrate the start of spring. Sham el-Nessim isn't celebrated in any other country.

* Today, Sham el-Nessim is a holiday and families go out to enjoy the fresh spring air. The spring air is very good for you! People often have a picnic in the country, in parks or along the Nile.

* Special food is eaten at Sham el-Nessim. Traditionally, boiled eggs are eaten for breakfast. Eggs are decorated in bright colours by children. They usually paint the eggs in the morning and leave them in the sun to dry.

* Another traditional food which is eaten on this day is FESEEKH: Fish that is dried with salt. This tradition also dates back to ancient Egyptian times. When people had more fresh fish than they could eat, they put salt on it to preserve it.

* It is important to buy FESEEKH from a clean shop so that you are sure that the fish will be good for you.

Classwork

I. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1- When we stood on the beach, we could feel a ……

a. parade **b. season** **c. tradition** **d. breeze**

2- We decorated our homes with red paper ……

a. lanterns **b. eggs** **c. costumes** **d. windows**

3- There are four …… in a year.

a. midnights **b. seasons** **c. relatives** **d. traditions**

4- At…… there were fireworks to welcome the new year.

a. midday **b. morning** **c. midnight** **d. midterm**

5- Many people like to freeze food to …… it.

a. decorate **b. preserve** **c. paint** **d. dress up**

6- When we…… eggs, we try to use natural colours.

a. draw **b. clean** **c. eat** **d. paint**

7- At some festivals, children wear colourful ……

a. flowers **b. pictures** **c. costumes** **d. customs**

8- …… , we eat cakes in Eid al-Fitr.

a. Nearly **b. Traditionally** **c. Slowly** **d. Sadly**

Language functions

Using sequencing words استخدام كلمات التسلسل

First of all	اولا – قبل كل شئ
Next	
Afterwards	

After – before
At(midnight –midday, …..)
The next day- morning - afternoon

1- Mr Sergany's two-day festival. **(SB page 15)**

- First of all, the two-day festival is opened by Mr Sergany at 9 a.m. Afterwards there is an art competition. At midday, lunch isserved. After Lunch, there is a children's sports competition, the next morning, you can look at and buy crafts. Before Mr Sergany closes the festival at 1 p.m., you can listen to some traditional music.

1- Thanksgiving Day **(WB page 8)**

-First of oil, a large bird and special food are bought at the shops and cooked. Next we ploy or watch a game of American football. After wards, many people go on a parade, with balloons and music. At dinner, we eat the bird and say thank you for all the good things in our life. The next day, we give money or food to poor people.

Classwork

. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- You tell your friend how you celebrate Sham el-Nassim.
2- Someone asks you what you do first when you get up.
3- A friend wonts to know what to do after you paint the eggs.

Homework

I Finish the following dialogue:

Samar asks her sister Aya about Eid al-Fitr Day.

Samar : Hello! Aya.
Aya : Hello! Samar.
Samar : ..(1)..... ?
Aya : By the end of Ramadan.
Samar : What habits do people do on this day ?
Aya : (2).....
Samar : Do they eat any special food ?
Aya : (3).....
Samar : (4)..... ?
Aya : I can see fireworks on that day in the sky.

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You tell your friend how to preserve fish with salt.
2. You meet your friend in the first day of the new year.
3. An English friend asks you how to spend Sham el-Nessim in Egypt.

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

Sham el-Nessim means smelling the breeze and it is celebrated all over Egypt on a Monday in April or May. The festival started in about 2700 BCE. The ancient Egyptian year had three seasons and Sham el-Nessim was held to celebrate the start of spring. Sham el-Nessim isn't celebrated in any other country. Sham el-Nessim is a holiday in Egypt. People often have picnics in parks and along the Nile. Special foods are eaten at Sham el-Nessim.

Traditionally, boiled eggs are eaten for breakfast. Children usually paint eggs in the morning. Feseekh is also eaten on that day. It's important to buy **it** from a clean shop.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. When is Sham el-Nessim celebrated in Egypt ?
2. How many seasons did the ancient Egyptian year have ?
3. What do children do at Sham el-Nessim ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "it" refers to ..... .

a. egg **b. holiday** **c. feseekh** **d. breeze**

5. .....foods are eaten at Sham el-Nessim.

a. Normal **b. Original** **c. Special** **d.Bad**

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: Would you use ..... to see at night ? B: Yes, of course.

a. umbrellas **b. lanterns** **c. watches** **d. bikes "**

2. The ancient Egyptian year had three .....

a. weeks **b. seasons** **c. months** **d. springs**

3. At Sham el-Nessim, eggs are..... in bright colours by children.

a. damaged **b. boiled** **c. decorated** **d. fried**

4. The lessons..... yesterday by Ahmed.

a. wrote **b. were written** **c. write** **d. writing**

5. A: What..... collected by Marwa last week ? B: Money for charities.

a. was **b.is** **c. being** **d.are**

6. Why are foods..... in cans ?

a. keep **b.kept** **c. keeping** **d. keeps**

5- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Benz invented the first car. (was)
2. Do they give presents to children at festivals ? (Are)
3. Mother's Day is always celebrated in our family. (We)
4- Can you buy that bike? (be)
5- Ola baked a cake last week. (A cake)

6-Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- Sham el-Nessim in Egypt 2- a trip on the beach with your friends
3-Spring festivals 4- The New Year's Day in China.

Write an email of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- an email to your pen friend telling him how Sham el-Nessim is celebrated in Egypt
- an email to your cousin about Eid al-Fitr Day

Revision A

Reading

Welcome to Aswan!

Visitors to Egypt should visit Aswan, in the south of Egypt. All the guidebooks say that it is a wonderful place to spend a holiday. You can visit the Nubian Museum there. Many important and historical things were moved to the museum in the 1960's. You should visit Aswan's bazaar, too. Many things are sold here, for example clothes, nuts and fruit, flowers and baskets. Everyone should also take a trip on one of feluccas to see the beautiful Nile River.

Many tourists visit the amazing nearby temples of Philae and Kalabsha. You should take a good camera. Many photographs are taken at Elephantine Island. It has this name because the rocks next to the island look like elephants that are swimming in the Nile. There is a tourist information center near the railway station. The people there can help you to find a hotel. The best time to come is in the winter, when the temperature is about 25°C, or less if there is a cool breeze. There is little rain in Aswan. Fewer tourists visit in the summer because it is very hot.

Listening

Taha : : I've finished my book now so I'd like a new one. Is there a good place to buy books near here?

Amir :The best place is on this road. The New Bookshop is opposite the bank. I suggest that you go there. I'll come with you.

Taha : It's a big shop. Where do you suggest we start looking?

Amir : First of all, we can look at the adventure stories on the ground floor.

Taha : OK. Afterwards we can look on the first floor. There are sports books on the first floor, I like those.

Amir : Look. This is by your favourite writer. It's a new book. Have you read it?

Taha : No, I haven't. Did you read the last book she wrote?

Amir : Yes, It was very exciting. Did the end of the story make you feel happy?

Taha : It made me feel very happy. That's why I want to buy her new book.

Amir : OK, here it is.

Taha : Thanks. You should read it when I've finished it.

Amir : Great, thanks Taha!

Practice Test 1 a

1. Finish the following dialogue:

Heba is going to meet her friends today.

Mother : What are you going to do with your friends today ?
Heba : We want to have a picnic but we don't know where to go. (1).....?
Mother : Garden Park is a nice place for a picnic.
Heba : Yes, it is. What can I take for the picnic ?
Mother :..(2) .....
Heba : That's a good idea. Do I need my hat today. Mum ?
Mother : (3)..... The sun is very strong today.
Heba : (4)..... ?
Mother : Early in the morning. That's when the sun is not too hot.
Heba : I'll take your advice and wake up early, then!

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You drop a glass on the kitchen floor. Your younger sister walks into the room.
2. A friend asks you what you thought of a scary film that has just finished.
3. You tell a friend what you did last Saturday at midday.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

In Sweden, the longest day of the year is celebrated in June. It is the start of a five-week holiday. Most people go on a trip to the country with their families. Children put flowers in their hair and everyone eats a special cake. In the evening, a family meal is eaten. This usually includes **herring**: there are a lot of these in the sea around Sweden. After people have eaten, they usually go for a walk. Nobody goes to bed before twelve o'clock on this special day! There is sunshine until very late at night in Sweden at this time. In the north, it does not get dark at all! It can be difficult to sleep. To help **them**, people should find a room that is not very light.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What do most people do in June in Sweden ?
2. How can Swedish people help themselves sleep in the long days of June ?
3. Why do you think that people do not go to bed early in June in Sweden ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "herring" means a type of..... .

a. fish **b. bird** **c. ship** **d. shell**

5. The underlined word "them" refers to.....

a. children **b. people without a house** **c. people without families** **d. people in Sweden**

C. The Reader

4. a. Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. Farmer Grey	a. The horse who tells the story.
2. Black Beauty	b. A short, fat horse.
3. Merrylegs	c. A horse who had a difficult past.
4. Ginger	d. A horse who forgot his mother's advice.
	f. Black Beauty's first owner.

b. Answer the following questions:

1. What advice did Black Beauty's mother give him ?
2. What was Birtwick Park like ?
3. Do you think that the horses liked Birtwick Park ? Why ?
4. How do we know that Black Beauty had good owners ?
5. Do you think that Merrylegs was wrong to throw the older boys off his back? Why? Why not?

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When is Sham el-Nessim …… in Egypt ?

a. **celebrated** b. celebrate c. celebrates d. celebrating

2. This book has…… pages than that book.

a. little b. less c. **fewer** d. least

3. People often drink …… water in hot weather than when it is cold.

a. less b. least c. **more** d. most

4. It is not too hot on the beach because there is a nice……

a. **breeze** b. cloud c. storm d. wave

5. The restaurant in the guidebook was a very good ……

a. review b. parade c. information d. **recommendation**

6. I don't know how to get to your house. Can you give me ……?

a. activities b. **directions** c. costumes d. conclusions

6. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. When you go to Luxor, I think you should visit the museum, (recommend)

* When you go to luxor, I recommend visiting the museum.

2. The blue bottle has more water than the green bottle, (less)

* The green bottle has less water than the blue bottle.

3. Manal always helps people, (helpful)

*Manal is always helpful.

7. Write an email of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- You tell your English friend how Mother's Day is celebrated in Egypt.
- You have just watched a great film and you want to tell your friend about it

Practice Test 1 b

1. Finish the following dialogue:

Seif has just watched a film at Yassin's house.

Seif : That was a very good film.

Yassin :Yes, it was. (1)…… ?

Seif :I was frightened when Detective Zaki was in the desert. Why did he go there ?

Yassin : (2)……

Seif :Now I understand. Do you recommend watching his other detective films ?

Yassin :(3)……

Seif :Ok, I'll take your advice. (4)…… ?

Yassin : You can find many of his films on the internet.

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. A tourist asks you where he can buy a map. You know that the tourist information centre gives out maps for free.

2. Your friend has finished a book. The end of the book made you feel sad. You want to know if your friend thinks the same.
3. A friend asks you what you do before and after dinner.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

It's my first visit to Egypt. My friends advised me to go to Alexandria. It's summer. However, it is not very hot there, so many tourists go at this time. I'm staying in a hotel in Alexandria now. It is Friday, so there is little traffic in the streets. The hotel is near the sea and I can hear the boats. The hotel is also near the tourist information centre, but it is closed today. Tomorrow I will ask about what I should see in the city. The guidebook says that I should visit Fort Qaitbey. The stones in the fort are from the famous lighthouse. They were used after the lighthouse collapsed in an earthquake in 1303.
Best wishes,
Andy

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do many tourists Alexandria in summer ?
2. Who do you think Andy is writing this email to and why ?
3. Which place does the guidebook advise Andy to visit ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "collapsed" means…… .
a. was built b. fell c. started d- was seen
5. The underlined word "it" refers to ……
a. the hotel b. the tourist information centre
c. the road d. Fort Qaitbey

The Reader

4. a. Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. Black Beauty 2. Black Beauty's mother 3. Squire Gordon 4. Squire Gordon's wife	a. She said, "Never bite or kick, even when you are ju a game". b. This horse had one white foot. c. This horse had short, fat legs. d. She named the horse "Black Beauty". e. Farmer Grey sold Black Beauty to this person.

b. Answer the following questions:

1. Who helped Black Beauty to learn to pull a carriage ?
2. Why did Ginger sometimes bite or kick people ?
3. Why did Squire Gordon's children stop visiting the horses ?
4. Do you think that Merrylegs was right to behave badly with the children ? Why ? Why not ?
5. Do you think that it was natural for Ginger to change her bad behaviour ? Why ? Why not ?

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It is cold and windy today. When you go outside, you …… a coat.
a. wear b. should wear c. shouldn't wear are wearing
2. …… students in our school have visited England.
a. Few b. Little c.Less d.The least

3. The museum …… by thousands of tourists every day.
3 visited b. is visiting c. is visited d. was visited
4. The students usually stay in a youth…… when they visit the city.
a. hotel b. centre c. hostel d. office
5. Salt is often used to…… fish and other food.
a. pack b. preserve c celebrate d. decorate
6. The teacher asked us to write a…… of our visit to the museum.
a. character b. title c. conclusion d. description

6. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. March has more days than February, (fewer)
2. You do not have to pay to go into the museum, (free)
3. I advise you to visit Aswan, (should)

7 . Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- a review of a book you liked
- why you think Egypt is a good place for tourists to visit

Science and technology

LESSONS 1, 2

essential	ضروري	usual schools	مدارس معتادة	results	نتائج
develop	يطور	graph	رسم بياني	an email	بريد الكتروني
attention	انتباه	check	يفحص	hardworking	مجتهد في عمله
engineering	هندسة	traffic	مرور	focus	يركز
scientific	علمي	ability	مقدرة	encourage	يشجع
data	معلومات	technology	تكنولوجيا	dinosaur	ديناصور
text	نص	exciting jobs	وظائف جيدة	expert	خبير
skill	مهارة	scientist	عالم	engineer	مهندس
*STEM (Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths).				علوم تكنولوجيا هندسة رياضيات	

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
make	يصنع	made	made
do	يفعل	did	done
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
send	يرسل	sent	sent
build	يبني	built	built

كلمات متشابهة

graph	رسم بياني	photograph	صورة
skill	مهارة	skull	جمجمة
similar	مشابه	the same	نفس الشئ
data	بيانات	date	شئ طويل
easy	سهل	essay	مقالة

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
encourage	يشجع	discourage	يحبط
ability	مقدرة	disability	عجز
easy	سهل	difficult	صعب

Definitions

encourage	يشجع	to make someone really like and do something
focus	يركز	to give all your attention to something
expert	خبير	having very special skills
essential	ضرورى	very important
data	معلومات	information or facts

PREPOSITION

in English	باللغة الانجليزية	focus on	يركز علي
fall through	يسقط خلال	encourage... to	يشجع علي
interested in	مهتم ب	At the office	في المكتب
On earth	على الارض	At university	في الجامعة

Expression تعبيرات هامة

fight heart disease	يكافح امراض القلب	do projects	ينجز مشروعات
work together	يعملوا سويا	do work	يؤدى عمل
make a graph	يعمل رسم بيانى	people with different jobs	اشخاص يعملون في وظائف مختلفة
look	يبدو		

Language Notes

Hard بجدية – بغزارة - صعب - صلب **hardly** بالكاد – بصعوبة بالغة

I work hard to get high marks.
I can hardly hear you. It is very noisy.

Every day كل يوم **everyday** يومى

We use our mobiles every day.
We use our mobiles in our everyday life.

(like / such as) عندما نعطي مثال من الممكن ان نستخدم

People with different jobs, **such as / like** teachers, should knowhow to use a computer,

- **know (knew - known)** يعرف كيف

Do you know how to use a computer?

Reading

SB 18

STEM schools

Today, knowing how to use modern technology is essential because people use it every day in schools, athome and at work. It can't be easy if you don't know how to use a computer or send an email. People with many different jobs, such as teachers, engineers and scientists all need to understand how to use the latest technology.

Students who are very good at STEM subjects (science, technology, engineering and maths) can also help develop the technology of the future, STEM schools are special schools which focus on developing students' ability in these subjects. There are now STEM schools around the world where lessons are different to those in usual schools. Teachers-encourage students to do projects where they work together to solve problems.

A lesson might be about how fast a ball falls through the air, or it might be using data to make a graph. Expert teachers help the students through the projects and check their results.

In Egypt, there are now-STEM schools around the country and more will be built in the future. STEM school students must be hardworking. All their lessons are in English, so that they can understand and use scientific texts from around the world while they study. Experts say that there will be many more jobs in the future that need-skills in STEM subjects. When they finish studying, STEM school students will be able to work in exciting jobs that will use the skills that they have learned.

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To ..... on something means to give all your attention to it.

a. learn **b. fight** **c. focus** **d. speak**

2. Information or facts about something is called .....

a. graphs **b. data** **c. skills** **d. results**

3- I ..... my brother to practise sports. So he practises it regularly.

a. encouraged **b. discouraged** **c. insisted** **d. objected**

4." ..... " means very important.

a. Exciting **b. Boring** **c. Essential** **d.Easy**

5.The scientists have ..... a new medicine to help fight heart disease.

a. developed **b. dropped** **c. dried** **d.done**

6. Ali's cousin is studying ..... at university.

engineer **b. engine** **c. engineering** **d. engineers**

7- Mona is interested in ancient history. She might be a/an.....

a. doctor **b. vet** **c. archaeologist** **d. nurse**

8. Students..... projects where they work together to develop their skills.

a. make **b.do** **c.get** **d.give**

Grammar

Expressing certainty and uncertainty التعبير عن التأكد و عدم التأكد

Must be	can't be	might be	might not be

Subject فاعل + must (be) (عندما نشعر بالتأكد من حدوث شئ او صحته) لابد ان يكون

You must be Ali's brother. You look very similar.
He is a good popular doctor. He must be clever.

Subject فاعل + can't be .....(عندما نشعر بالتاكد من استحالة حدوث شئ او عدم صحته) لا يمكن ان يكون

That can't be a dinosaur. There aren't any dinosuars on earth.
She has a lot of work to do. She can't be free.

تستخدم هذه التعبيرات لتدل على التاكد

-I feel sure /I'm certain.... . - surely/ certainly
-definitely -I have no doubt.... - It is impossible .....

Subject فاعل +might (be) ربما يكون /might not (be) .(عندما نشعر بعدم التأكد من حدوث شئ) ربما لا يكون

He might be at home, but I'm not sure.
I don't know why the baby girl is crying. She might be hungry

تستخدم هذه التعبيرات لتدل على عدم التاكد

- I'm not sure / certain ... -I have no idea ...
- It is possible / probable... - Possibly / Probably -I don't think so.
I don't know.

Rewrite تدريب

1- **I'm sure (certain) متاكد** Ali **is** clever. He gets the full mark. **(must be)**
Ali **must be** clever. He gets the full mark.
2- **Perhaps** this coin **is** Egyptian. I'm not certain **(might)**
This coin **might be** Egyptian.
3- **I feel sure** this **is not** a real dinosaur. There aren't any dinosaurs on earth. **(can t be)**
This can't be a real dinosaur because there aren't any dinosaurs on earth.
4- Asmaa is absent. **It's probable that** she **is** ill. **(might)**
Asmaa is absent. She might be ill.
5- The man is rich. He has three cars. **(must)**
•He must be rich.
6-I'm sure Ali isn't at home. I've just met him at the zoo. **(can't)**
•Ali can't be at home.

More examples

* He must be late. (can't be)
- He can't be early.

* He must be happy, (sure)

- I'm sure he is happy.

* She might be at home.	(probable)

- It's probable that she is at home.

Classwork

1 · Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or a:

1- In this photo, everyone is wearing warm clothes. It ..... very cold there.

a, may be **b. might be** **c. can't be** **d. must be**

2- This..... All's bicycle. He doesn't have one.

a. must be **b. will be** **c. can't be** **d. can be**

3- That man is running very fast. He..... fit.

a, might be **b. must be** **c. can't be** **d. won't**

4- Aliaa walks to school every day. Her school ..... very far.

a. can't be **b. must be** **c- might be** **d. will be**

5- Nour answered oil the questions correctly. She ..... be clever.

a. might **b. must** **c. can't** **d. mustn't**

6- Take a bottle of water with you. It..... very hot today.

a. mustn't be **b. can't be** **c. might be** **d. won't be**

2. · Rewrite the following using the word (s) in brackets to give the some meaning:

1- Those girls are laughing. I'm sure they are happy, (must be)

2- I'm sure it isn't easy to join STEM schools, (can't be)

3- Perhaps it will be hot tomorrow, (might be)

4- I'm not sure if this man is a tourist, (might)

HOMEWORK

1-Finish the following dialogue:

Dalia and Raghda are talking about STEM schools.

Oalia : Do you know the STEM subjects ?

Raghda : Yes, they are science, technology, engineering and maths. They are essential.

Dalia : (1)..... ?

Raghda : Because they help develop the technology of the future.

Dalia : Are STEM schools similar to the usual ones ?

Raghda : (2).....

Dalia : In what language are the STEM subjects ?

Raghda : (3).....

Dalia : (4)..... ?

Raghda : Yes, there are STEM schools in Egypt.

2· Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- ..... is information or facts.

a. Technology **b. Data** **c. Ability** **d. Job**

2- STEM schools are different ..... usual schools.

a. for **b. of** **c. in** **d. to**

3- We used data to ..... a graph about modern technology.

a. make **b. focus** **c. use** **d. need**

4- Look at the tourists. They are swimming in the sea. The weather ..... very cold.

a. can't be **b. must be** **c. will be** **d. is**

5- SB We're not sure how old this coin is. It …… hundreds of years old.

a. must be **b. might be** **c. can't be** **d. will be**

6- You won the first prize! You …… very happy.

a. can't be **b. might be** **c. must be** **d. is**

7- They study all subjects…… English.

a. on **b. to** **c. in** **d. from**

8. Take a bottle of water with you. It…… be very hot today.

a) might not **b) should** **c) can't** **d) might**

9. She is interested in ancient history. She…… be an archaeologist one day.

a) can't **b) mustn't** **c) shouldn't** **d) might**

10. Some scientists have to work in Antarctica. It…… very cold and difficult.

a) mustn't **b) can't be** **c) couldn't be** **d) must be**

11. Nabil is too ill. He…… be at work.

a) can't **b) must** **c) should** **d) might**

12. Mr Said…… be at school. I am uncertain.

a) must **b) can't** **c) might** **d) should**

3·Rewrite the following using the word (s) in brackets to give the some meaning:

1- I am sure the museum is closed. There are no lights on. (must be)

2- Mona is very interested in ancient history. I think she will be an archaeologist one day. (might be)

4. I'm not sure that he is at home. (might be)

5. He is rich. He has a wonderful car. (must be)

6. He is very clever. I'm sure. (must be)

7. He won't be in today's match. He got the red card last match, (can't)

8. She is poor. She wears old clothes, (must)

9. He isn't at school, he is ill. I'm not sure. (might)

10- I'm sure Mustafa is at home. His car is in front of the house, (must be)

11- I'm sure Osman is happy. He has just won a medal, (must be)

12- I'm sure it isn't easy to learn Japanese, (can't be)

13. I'm sure that my father isn't in the street as he travelled abroad, (can't be)

14- I'm sure work in Antarctica isn't very easy. (can't be)

15- It's possible that the weather will be rainy tomorrow, (might)

16. Perhaps Fatma is Sudanese, (might)

17. It's possible that Abdullah is in the company now. (might)

18. Reda might be at the club. (I'm not sure)

19. I'm certain that Sandy is very ill. (must)

20. Nourhan must be clever. She gets high marks. (I'm sure)

21. Maya must be ill. (can't)

22. Ahmed lives in an old house. I'm sure he isn't rich. (must)

4 · Write a paragraph of Seven (7) sentences on one of the following:

1-STEM schools 2- knowing how to use modern technology is essential

Science and technology

LESSONS 3. 4 . 5

achievement	انجازات	amazing	مدهش	award	جائزة-تكريم
chance	فرصة	cause	سبب	definitely	بالتاكيد
high technology		تكنولوجيا فائقة		produce	ينتج
drinking water	مياه للشرب	smart phone	تليفون ذكى	animal waste	روث الحيوان
ebook	كتاب الكترونى	pollution	تلوث	polluted	ملوث
laptop	كومبيوتر محمول	salt	ملح	plants	نباتات
source	مصدر	materials	مواد	prevent	يمنع
bookshop	محل كتب	British	بريطانى	proud	فخور
machine	الة	device	جهاز	container	حاوية
invention	اختراع	certain	متاكد	dirty water	مياة غير نظيفة
energy production		انتاج الطاقة		fresh water	مياة الشرب
wi-fi (wireless fidelity)		واي فاي		rewarding	مكافئ
science competition		مسابقة علمية		remove	يفصل

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
tell	يخبر	told	told
take	ياخذ	took	taken
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
win	يفوز	won	won

كلمات متشابهة

pollution	تلوث	population	سكان
invention	اختراع	discovery	اكتشاف
expert	خبير	experience	تجربة
price	ثمن	prize	جائزة
way	طريقة	weigh	يزن

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
pleased	سعيد	displeased	غير سعيد
local	محلى	international	دولى
low	منخفض	high	مرتفع
online	متصل	offline	غير متصل
important	هام	unimportant	غير هام

Definitions

ebook	كتاب الكترونى	a book that can be read online
award	تكريم	a prize someone gets for something they have achieved
wi-fi	واى فاى	something which allows computers and mobile phones to connect to the internet

smartphone	تليفون ذكى	a mobile phone that can work like a computer
laptop	لاب توب	a small computer that you can carry with you

PREPOSITION

around the world	حول العالم	Talk about	يتحدث عن
tell about	يخبر عن	at a low price	بسعر منخفض
On internet	على النت	Hear from	يسمع من
award for	جائزة على	connect to	يرتبط بـ

Expression تعبيرات هامة

invent a device	يخترع جهاز	work well	يعمل بشكل جيد	stay healthy	يحافظ علي صحته		
do well	يؤدي جيدا	win a prize	يفوز بجائزة	first of all	قبل كل شئ		
Type an essay	يطبع مقالة	do a quiz	يحل لغز او اختبار قصير				

Language Notes

Allow ….. to + المصدر let …. المصدر

The teacher allowed us to go out.
The teacher let us go out

A way to + المصدر a way of + v+ing طريقة ل

I know a way to the market.
Listening to the Quran is a way of relaxing.

• award جائزة • rewardمكافأة

The award was given to the best player in Africa.
There'll be a reward for the one who finishes first.

Win (كاس – جائزة – مباراة) يفوز earn يكسب مال
Gain (خبرة – معرفة) يكتسب beat (فريق – منافس) يهزم

I won a cup last week. My uncle earns a lot of money.
I gained a lot of information when I read that book.
He never beats me at chess.

Listening

SB 20

Interviewer: Studying at a STEM school can't be easy- Only students who are very good at science, technology,engineering and maths can study at the schools and we have to work hard when I get there, but studying time at a STEM school must be very rewarding.Today, I have some students from STEM schools with me. They're going to tell us about their amazing achievements. First of all, Azza is going to talk about an award that she has won.

Azza : Hello! I won an award for the project that I did at my STEM school. First of all, our class studied the problems caused by polluted water around the world.
I understood that people definitely can't stay healthy if they have to drink polluted water, so I also studied ,plants and realised that some of them can clean dirty water. I asked myself: Could this be a way to solve the problem?
Interviewer: What happened next?
Azza : I developed an invention that cleans polluted water using only plants. I am sure that this can help people living in places that do not have fresh water. After we checked that the invention worked well, I entered a science competition in the USA. I was very pleased to win an award. I think my invention might be important. Now I want to take it around the world.There is a chance that it could help millions of people.
Interviewer: I think you're probably right.

Reading

WB 16

Successful stem school student Students in Egyptian STEM schools are encouraged to try to solve essential problems like pollution and energy production. Abdel Rahman Sharaf Eldeen and Mohamed Abd Elsalam, from 6 October STEM School, entered a competition in Italy in 2015. Their project helps to produce energy from animal waste and prevent pollution. Noha Shoukry and Asmaa Atef, from El Maadi STEM School, invented a device that removes salt from water using hightechnology. It produces drinking water at a low price .Yasmine Yehia. from the same school, invented a device that uses local materials. It cleans polluted water and produces a source of energy. The three girls won prizes in a competition in the USA in 2015. The families of all these students must be very proud.

Classwork

1 · Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or a:

1. You can use the …… to print something from your laptop.
a. screen **b. printer** **c. earphones** **d. mouse**
2. Modern train stations have ticket…… to take your ticket before travelling.
a. videos **b, machines** **c. bakeries** **d. glasses**
3. When you stop something to happen, it means that you…… it.
a, produce **b, increase** **c. prevent** **d, do**
4. The students used the…… from the experiment to draw a graph.
a. wi-fi **b. data** **c. smartphones** **d. messages**
5. We can use the internet in this cafe because it has……
a. laptop **b.TV** **c. ebook** **d. Wi-fi**
6. Scientists are given…… every year in a big festival.
a. medicine **b. experiments** **c. rewards** **d, awards**
7- My grandfather doesn't want a/an …… because he likes to buy new books from the bookshop.
a.ebook **b. laptop** **c. novel** **d. story**
8- The river was …… with lots of waste.
a. pulled **b. pointed** **c. built** **d. polluted**

Language functions

Express certainty, we can use للتعبير عن التأكد نستخدم

- I'm sure (he / she / it) is	- I'm sure he is clever. He studied hard.
-(He /She /It) must be	- He must be clever. He got high marks,
-(He/She/It) can't be.	- He can't be clever. He got low marks,

To express uncertainty, we can use للتعبير عن عدم التأكد نستخدم

- I'm not sure (he / she / it) is	I'm not sure. Amr is at school.
- (He / She / It) might be	He might be at the club. I'm not sure.
- Perhaps (he/she/it) will	Perhaps he will go to Cairo. I'm not certain.

Classwork

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You are sure that Jana isn't in Egypt. She is in England now.
2. Your friend is not at school today, he is ill. You're not sure.
3. You are asked about the train that leaves to Alexandria. Express certainty.
4. Khalid has travelled to Aswan for a week. You're sure he isn't at home.

HOMEWORK

1- Finish the following dialogue:

A dialogue between Reda and a tourist.

Reda : What's your name ?
Tourist : My name is John Adams.
Reda : (1) ..... ?
Tourist : I'm from Britain.
Reda : (2) ..... ?
Tourist : I'll stay here for 2 weeks.
Reda : What are you interested in ?
Tourist : (3) .....
Reda : Why are you here in Egypt ?
Tourist : (4.....
Reda : You're right. The Egyptian history is very exciting.

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You are asked about your mother. You're sure she is in the kitchen.
2. Ali has gone away on holiday for 10 days. You are certain he isn't at home.
3. Your friend asks you about the match if it is at 7 p.m. Express uncertainty.

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

Students in Egyptian **STEM** schools are encouraged to try to solve essential problems like pollution and energy production. Adel and Mohamed from October **STEM** School, entered a competition in Italy in 2015. Their project helps to produce energy from animal waste and prevent pollution. Noha and Asmaa, from EI-Maadi **STEM** School, invented a device that removes I salt from water using high technology. **It** produces drinking water at a low price. Yasmine, from the same school invented a **device** that uses local materials. Itcleans polluted water and produces a source of energy, the three girls won prizes in a competition in the USA in 2015.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Which students had projects that help to solve pollution ?
2. What are students in Egyptian **STEM** Schools encouraged to do ?
3. Do you think international competitions for students are important ? Why?/Why not?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ……

a. salt **b. technology** **c. water** **d. device**

5. The underlined word "device" means……

a. computer **b. machine** **c. container** **d. technology**

4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If someone makes you like something, then he……you.

a. focuses **b. encourages** **c. collects** **d. moves**

2. You can carry your……with you anywhere.

a. laptop **b. Wi-fi** **c. ebook** **d. password**

3. My grandfather has never bought a/an……as he doesn't have a computer.

a. ebook **b. notebook** **c. workbook** **d. activity book**

4. Sara has a lot of work to do at her factory, so she……at home.

a. must be **b. can't be** **c. may be** **d. might be**

5. I'm sure it's a wolf. It……a dog.

a. must be **b. can't be** **c. may be** **d. might be**

6. They are laughing loudly. They……happy.

a. must be **b. can't be** **c. mustn't be** **d. won't be**

7- Dina used the ……she collected to make a graph.

a. award **b. data** **c. wi-fi** **d. laptop**

8- I ……my son to study hard.

a. produced **b. achieved** **c. talked** **d. encouraged**

9- It is ……to have breakfast before going to school.

a. useless **b. bad** **c. essential** **d. dangerous**

10- Raneem ……be at home. I'm not sure.

a. must **b. will** **c. can't** **d. might**

11- Osman is driving a very expensive car. He ……rich.

a. must be **b. can't be** **c. might be** **d. will be**

12- Mostafa has been working very hard today. He ……tired.

a. can't be **b. might be** **c. must be** **d. will be**

5-Rewrite the following using the word (s) in brackets to give the some meaning:

1. Perhaps I'll play tennis today, I'm not sure. (might)
2. I'm sure Ali is happy as he has just won a prize, (must)
3. Tamer might visit us tomorrow. (I'm not sure)
4. I'm sure Omar is at home. The lights in his room are on. (must be)
5. Perhaps Nour will come to the party, (might)
6. I'm sure this man isn't Egyptian. He can't speak Arabic, (can't be)

6- Write a paragraph of Seven (7) sentences on one of the

1- Modern technology 2- The computer as a useful invention.

Write an email of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- an email to your friend about smartphones
- an email to your friend who is entering a writing competition

Achievements

LESSONS 1, 2

chess	شطرنج	soon	قريبا	repair	يصلح
sure	متاكد	firefighter	رجل اطفاء	wardrobe	دولاب ملابس
level	مستوى	improve	يحسن	decide	يقرر
past	مرورا ب	invite	يدعو	business	عمل – شغل
TV channel	قناة تليفزيون	however	مع ذلك	degree	درجة علمية
genius	عبقري	intelligent	ذكي	work out	يحل مسالة
graduate	خريج	show	عرض	software	برمجيات
as well as	ايضا	several	عديد	sum	مسالة
computer programming		برمجة كومبيوتر		rest	راحة

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
write	يكتب	wrote	written
become	يصبح	became	become
teach	يدرس	taught	taught
hurt	يؤذي	hurt	hurt

كلمات متشابهة

improve	يحسن	prove	يثبت
degree	درجة علمية	mark	درجة سؤال
show	عرض TV	offer	عرض مال
channel	قناة TV	canal	قناة ماء
homework	واجب منزلي	housework	اعمال منزلية

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
intelligent	ذكي	stupid	غبي
better	افضل	worse	اسوء
well	بطريقة جيدة	badly	بطريقة سيئة

Definitions

sum	مسالة حسابية	maths problem to work out
skill	مهارة – قدرة	ability
intelligent	ذكى	very quick to learn and understand things
software	برمجيات	the different systems used by a computer
award	تكريم – جائزة	a prize given for an achievement
computer programming	برمجة كومبيوتر	writing the systems that make a computer work
genius	عبقرى	a person with a very highly developed brain

PREPOSITION

on show	في العرض	at a high level	فى مستوى عالي
put out	يطفئ	come into	يدخل
able to	قادر علي	Genius at	عبقرى فى
At the age	فى عمر	Fall over	يقع
invite ..to	يدعو ل	hear about	يسمع عن

Expression تعبيرات هامة

walk past يسير مارا ب	software businesses شركات برمجيات	quite well نوعا ما جيدا	
do a sum يحل مسالة	do homework يعمل الواجب	get a reward يحصل على جائزة	

Language Notes

six-year-old صفة (للعمر)	• **six years old**
A car hit a six-year-old girl.	
The car hit the girl who was six years old.	

• **software** برمجيات	• **hardware** اجزاء الكومبيوتر
Electronic books are kind of software.	
My laptop runs on most types of computer hardware.	

Reading

SB 23

Mahmoud Wael : A child genius

Six-year-old Abla Wael from Cairo couldn't do her maths homework one evening. Her father was helping her when her younger brother came into the room. Mahmoud couldn't speak very well yet because he was only three. However, he was able to give all the answers to the sums.

Mahmoud's father was sure that his son was a genius. Soon, TV channels heard about his amazing maths skills and invited him to be on their shows.

When Mahmoud was seven, the American University in Cairo helped him to improve his English because it would help him to study maths at a high level. After only three months, he could read, write and speak English quite well.

One day, Mahmoud walked past a class that was studying computer programming at the university and he could understand the lesson. Soon one of the biggest computer software business in the world became interested in Mahmoud because he was so intelligent. He studied computer programming and got several awards. He was then able to teach university graduates about computer programming. He was only eleven!

Universities around the world invited Mahmoud to start a degree, but he decided to finish school first. He said that he would like to go to university in Egypt.

Classwork

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The six …… old girl couldn't do her maths homework.

a. years **b. year's** **c.year** **d. years**

2. Heba was helping her mother when Hassan…… into the room.

a. gave **b. came** **c. took** **d. slept**

3. He is very young, but he can…… all the answers to the sums.

a. take **b. do** **c. make** **d. give**

4. The university helped me to…… my English, so I speak it fluently.

a. prove **b. improve** **c. draw** **d. write**

5.1 studied computer programming and got several……

a. words **b. wards** **c. awards** **d. shows**

6. When you finish your study at university/you can get your……

a prize **b. degree** **c. agree** **d. sum**

7. If you stand on one leg, you may …… over.

a. feel **b.fall** **c.fly** **d.fill**

8. When you improve your English, you can easily study at a high……

a. level **b. place** **c. show** **d. light**

Grammar

Expressing ability and inability in the past التعبير عن القدرة و عدم القدرة فى الماضى

Subject فاعل + could /couldn't (was/were able to) +inf. مصدر الفعل

-I **could** swim when I **was** seven.

- At the **age** of **two**, my brother **couldn't ride** a bike.

-When my father **was** a young boy, he **could** ride a bike but he **couldn't** drive a car.

-The exam was difficult, but I **was able to** answer all the questions easi!,.

- I **was able t**o find your book, but I **couldn't** find mine,

- I **wasn't able to** carry the heavy bag yesterday.

Could + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل? السؤال بهل

Was / Were + subject فاعل+able to + inf. مصدر الفعل?

Could you ride a bike when you were four? -**Yes**, I **could**. - **No**, I **couldn't**

Was Ali **able to** fix his tablet? -**Yes**, he **was**. - **No**, he **wasn't**.

Question word اداة استفهام + could + subject فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

Question word + was / were + subject فاعل + able to + inf. مصدر الفعل

What could you do when you were five?

What was Mohammed able to fix?

Rewrite تدريب

1- Last month, I **wasn't able** to climb that wall. **(couldn't)**

Last month, I **couldn't** climb that wall.

2 When Ahmed was young, he **swam** so well. **(could)**

When Ahmed was young, he **could swim** so well.

3 Why **couldn't** Ali open the door? **(could)**
Why **wasn't** Ali **able to** open the door?
4 My sisters **weren't able to** buy that expensive mobile. **(couldn't)**
My sisters couldn't buy that expensive mobile.
5- Mohamed **had the ability to** climb trees when he was young. **(could)**
Mohamed could climb trees when he was young. ;

Classwork

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Haneen couldn't……her maths homework.
a. did **b, done** **c. do** **d. does**
2. Mahmoud ……to give all answers to the sums.
a. could **b. were able** **c. couldn't** **d. was able**
3. After only three months, he……read and speak English.
a, could **b. was able** **c. were able** **d.wasn't able**
4. Many children……draw pictures when they were six.
a- was able **b. was able to** **c. were able** **d. were able to .**
5. There was a fire at the hotel, but the firefighters……put it out very quickly,
a. were able to **b. couldn't** **c. was able** **d. weren't able**
6. ……you play chess when you were six ?
a. Weren't **b. Could** **c. Were** **d. Was**

2·Rewrite the following using the word (s) in brackets to give the some meaning:

1- Yesterday, I was not able to get up early in the morning, (couldn't)
2- When I was young, I wrote short stories, (could)
3- Which of the sums in the maths test did you do? (able to)

HOMEWORK

1-Finish the following dialogue:

Tamer meets Hassan on his way in the evening.

Tamer : Good evening, Hassan. Where are you going ?
Hassan : I'm going to the club.
Tamer : Club! (1)…… ?
Hassan ; To practise sports.
Tamer : Why do you practise sports ?
Hassan : (2)……:……
Tamer : Which sport do you practise ?
Hassan :(3)……
Tamer : (4)…… ?
Hassan ; I play football on Fridays.

2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When were you able …… ?
a. to swim **b. swimming** **c.swim** **d.swum**
2. A …… is a maths problem needs to be worked out.
a. skill **b.sum** **c. price** **d. prize**
3. I wasn't…… read until I went to school.
a. able **b. able to** **c.able for** **d. able about**

4. A …… is a student who has already got a first degree at university.

a. pupil **b. worker** **c. graduate** **d. professor**

5.A/An …… person can learn and understand things very quickly.

a. lazy **b. foolish** **c. intelligent** **d. stupid**

6. Sara……able to teach university graduates about computerprogramming.

a. were **b. could** **c. couldn't** **d. was**

7. When you were ten, could you……on one leg ?

a. stand **b. standing** **c, stands** **d. stood**

8- When you were ten, ……you stand on one leg?

a.have **b.could** **c.had** **d. can**

9- Yesterday, Omar ……do that exercise alone. So, he called me for help

o. was able to **b. could** **c. can't** **d. couldn't**

2·Rewrite the following using the word (s) in brackets to give the some meaning:

1. Al-Said couldn't see the programme last week because he was busy. (able)
2. The good firefighter had the ability to put out the fire quickly. (able)
3. He wasn't able to stand on one leg when he was six. (couldn't)
4- When I was young, I wrote short stories, (could)
5- Which of the sums in the maths test did you do? (able to)
6- Amr's parents weren't able to pay for the trip. (couldn't)
7- My grandparents didn't go to university because they lived far from a city. (able to)
8- Ola had the ability to stand on one hand when she was young. (could)
9- What weren't they able to carry? (couldn't)
10- Ahmed was strong enough to carry the table, (was able to)
11- He succeeded in winning the gold medal last week. (was able to)
12- It was too difficult for me to play the guitar when I was six. (wasn't)
13- We didn't go out because it was too hot outside, (were not able to)

3- Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- your life when you were young -a job you would like to do

Write an email on one of the following:

1- To your cousin telling him/her about a genius you read about

2- To your teacher about your skills Your name is Soha

Achievements

LESSONS 3. 4 . 5

cycling	ركوب الدراجة	team	فريق	cold	بارد
result	نتيجة	revise	يراجع	in addition to	بالاضافة الي
memorize	يحفظ	swimmer	سباح	medicine	دواء – طب
achieve	يحقق	polite	مؤدب	online	متصل بالنت
medal	ميدالية	excellent	ممتاز	interview	مقابلة
brain	مخ	both	كلا من	must be	يجب ان يكون
trophy	كاس النصر	athlete	رياضي	course	دورة تدريبية
twenties	العشرينيات	furthermore	علاوة على ذلك	age	عمر – سن
historical site	موقع تاريخي	furniture	اثاث	possible	ممكن
score	يحرز	practise	يمارس	plan	خطة
complete	يكمل	drops	قطرات	tourism	السياحة
Olympic athletes		الرياضيون الاولمبيون		active	نشيط
ordinary people		اشخاص عاديين		either ..or	اما او
French	فرنسي	not only	ليس فقط	private lesson	درس خاص
perhaps	ربما	exercise	تمرين	smoke	يدخن

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
know	يعرف	knew	known
swim	يسبح	swam	swum

كلمات متشابهة

compete	ينافس	complete	يكمل
curse	لعنة	course	كورس
medal	ميدالية	model	نموذج
difficult	صعب	hard	صعب-صلب

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
result	نتيجة	cause	سبب
possible	ممكن	impossible	مستحيل
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل
win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

PREPOSITION

count to	يعد ل	In a shirt	يرتدي قميص
in addition	بالاضافة ل	at university	في الجامعة
at the end	في نهاية	at the age	في عمر

fall onto	يسقط علي	on time	في الوقت المحدد

Expression تعبيرات هامة

Achieve a result يحقق نتيجة	work hard يعمل بجد	that's amazing ذلك مذهل

Language Notes

• **both ... and** كلا من (اثبات) • **either.... or** ام او (نفى)

Both the teacher and the students are in class.
He both buys and sells mobile phones.
I had both lunch and dinner with my friends,
The boy is both young and intelligent.
She is either a genius or she works hard at school.

• **in addition** بالاضافة • **in addition to** بالاضافة الى

My father always goes to work on time. In addition, he does his work well
In addition to exercising every day. he never smokes.

As ك (مع الوظيفة) **like** مثل للتشبيه

His father works as a doctor.
He wears glasses like his father.

Listening

SB 25

Tarek :Did you watch the program on TV last night, Hassan? It was about some very intelligent children.
Hassan : No, I didn't. Tell me about it.
Tarek : Well, One of them, a boy from India became a doctor at the age of 7.
Hassan : Really! He must be a genius.
Tarek :Yes, he is. His parents knew there was something special about him. When he was very young, he could walk and talk before the age of one and he could also read very difficult books when he was only five. He became both the youngest doctor in India and the youngest boy to study medicine at university, he was twelve.
Hassan : That's amazing. What is he doing now?
Tarek : He is in his twenties now and he is still working as a doctor. Then, the TV program had an interview with a young girl from India. When she was eleven, she was the youngest person in a math competition. Not only did she win the competition, but she achieved amazing result, 100%.
Hassan :Wow, she is either a genius or she worked very hard at school.
Tarek : I am sure she is a genius. I work hard at school, too but I am not as good as she is.

Reading

SB 26

An Award to -------
I would like to give my mother an award because she is the best mother in the world. Because she looked after me and my brother and sister, she wasn't able to go to university

when she was younger. However, she started studying online two years ago and she has done very well in her exams. She wants to become a teacher one day and teaches young children.

She should get an award because she has shown us that it is possible both to be a good parent and to achieve things for yourself.

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 - A student gets a degree for completing a university ……

a trophy **b. medal** **c. course** **d. race**

2- He got a medal for the resutis he ……

a achieved **b. used** **c. made** **d. won**

3- Both Reem and Jehad …… athletes .

a. is **b. are** **c. was** **d. has**

4- He is either an intelligent boy …… he studies hard.

a and **b. nor** **c. or** **d. but**

5- sb A sports team might win a…… at the end of a competition.

a. trophy **b. meal** **c. degree** **d. price**

6- sb My father always goes to work on time, …… he does his work well.

a. inside **b. in addition** **c. however** **d. but**

7- The plural of shelf is……

a. shelves **b. shelvs** **c. shelfs** **d. shelf**

8- Tarek is a genius, he has something ……

a special **b. stupid** **c. private** **d. bad**

Language functions : t

Adding information إضافة معلومات

• Furthermore	علاوة على ذلك
• In addition	بالاضافة الى ذلك
• In addition to	بالاضافى الى

- Ahmed did his homework. **Furthermore** he helped his father.
- **In addition to** doing his homework, Ahmed helps his father .
- I could play tennis when I was eight. **In addition**, I could use the internet.

جملة كاملة+Furthermore/In addition/ Moreover+subjectفاعل+verb فعل+.....

He works many hours, **in addition**, he works on Fridays.

In addition to as well as besides + اسم noun – v+ing

- He studied three subjects, **in addition to** doing his homework.
- **In addition to soup**, Marwa cooked rice and potatoes.

Rewrite تدريب

1- I studied my lessons. In addition, I helped mum with the housework. (**studying**)
- In addition to studying my lessons. I helped mum with the housework.

Classwork

1-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Nada says that you could swim when you were ten. You also add that you could draw pictures.
2. You ask your friend about the hobbies he was able to do when he was young.
3. You tell your friend that you play video games and yni i listen to music

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Magdy is good at basketball. He's good at football, too. (Furthermore)
2. Salma played the guitar. In addition, she went shopping. (In addition to)
3. Toka bought tea yesterday. She bought sugar as well. (In addition)

HOMEWORK

1· Finish the following dialogue:

Ali is meeting a tourist on his way to the museum.

Ali : Hello, when did you arrive in Egypt ?
Tourist : Two days ago.
Ali : (1) ……..?
Tourist : Egypt is very nice.
Ali : Where are you staying ?
Tourist : (2)……..
Ali : How long will you stay in Egypt ?
Tourist : (3) ……..
Ali : (4) ……..?
Tourist : I'm going to visit the Pyramids tomorrow.
Ali : I wish you a happy stay in Egypt.
Tourist : Thank you.

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You are asked about what you like in addition to swimming.
2. You are asked about what you couldn't do when you were five.
3. You tell your friend that you practise sports in your free time. Add the information that you also play games on the internet.

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

I would like to give my mother an award because she is the best mother in the world. Because she looked after me and my brother and sister, she wasn't able to go to university when she was younger. However, she started studying online two years ago and she has done very well in her exams. She wants to become a teacher one day and teach young children. She should get an award because she has shown us that it is possible both to be a good parent and to achieve things for yourself,

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What wasn't the writer's mother able to do when she was younger ?
2. What does mother want to become ?
3. Why should the writer's mother get an award ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer's mother started studying online in ……

a. 2015 **b.2017** **c.2016** **d.2014**

5. The writer wants to give her/his mother a/an ……

a. medal **b. trophy** **c. award** **d. reward**

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If Omar……out this difficult sum, he would be given an award.

a. made **b.gave** **c. worked** **d.took**

2. He has many……he can play music, paint pictures and write stories.

a. jobs **b. skills** **.c. works** **d. businesses**

3. The scientist won a/an ……for discovering a new medicine.

a. award **b. trophy** **c. present** **d. sticker**

4……you ride a bike when you were six ?

a. Were **b. Do** **c.Able** **d. Could**

5. If someone can't hear you, you have to read……

a. in **b. out** **c. at** **d. of**

6. Were you……to answer these difficult questions?

a. could **b.can** **c.able** **d. should**

7- sb A/An …… is someone who is very intelligent.

o. genius **b. team** **c. mouse** **d. trophy**

8- sb Can you work out the answers to these maths ……?

a. software **b. skills**

c. sums **d. programmes**

9- Hala …… speak until she was two.

a. could **b. couldn't**

c. was able to **d. wasn't able**

10. ……you able to speak to the engineer yesterday?

a. Are **b. Were** **c. Did** **d. Had**

5-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- I was late, so I wasn't able to catch the bus. (couldn't)

2- Why couldn't they buy Omar the gift? (able to)

3- She couldn't read well when she was four. (wasn't)

4. All wasn't able to find the money that he lost. (couldn't)

5. Tahany likes swimming. She also likes reading. (In addition)

6. Mr Ayman is a good teacher. Also, he never gives private lessons. (Furthermore)

7-Write an email on one of the following:

1 - To a friend about your favourite person.

2- You write to your cousin about an achievement you have just done.

- Your name is Ola.

Write a paragraph ofseven(7) sentences about one of the following:

1- someone you know who is genius 2 - an award you have just got in a competition

Inventors

LESSONS 1, 2

inventors	مخترعون	planet	كوكب	Robot	انسان الى
object	شئ	design	يصمم	fire	نار
recognise	يتعرف علي	personal	شخصى	space robot	انسان الى فضائى
lawn mower	جزازة العشب	interest	اهتمام	volcano	بركان
voice	صوت انسان	include	يشمل	even	حتى
turn	يدور	under water	تحت الماء	scientific	علمى
vacuum cleaner	مكنسة كهربية	face	وجه	dive	يغطس
remind	يذكر	gas	غاز	hot rocks	صخور ملتهبة
friendly	ودود	message	رسالة	flight	رحلة طيران
entertain	يسلى	conversation	محادثة	life	الحياة
floors	طوابق	star	نجم	carefully	بعناية

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
give	يعطى	gave	given
feel	يشعر	felt	felt

كلمات متشابهة

planet	كوكب	plant	نبات
voice	صوت انسان	sound	صوت شئ
Invent	يخترع	Invite	يدعو
space	فضاء	spice	توابل

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
there	هناك	here	هنا
right	صواب	wrong	خطأ
inside	داخل	outside	خارج
below	اسفل	above	اعلى

Definitions

planet	كوكب	a large object in space that moves around a star
entertain	يسلى	do something that interests people
recognise	يتعرف على	know a person because you have seen them before
lawn mower	جرازة العشب	a machine to cut the grass in a garden or park
voice	صوت	you hear this when someone speaks.
personal	شخصى	for you or belonging to you
vacuum cleaner	مكنسة كهربية	a machine to keep your house clean
volcano	بركان	a large place from which fire and hot rockssometimes come

PREPOSITION

in order to	لكى	send... into	يرسل الى
for free	مجانا	give... to	يعطى الى
similar to	مشابه ل	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
belong to	ينتمى الى	Move around	يتحرك حول

Expression تعبيرات هامة

come home	ياتى للمنزل	turn its head	يدور برأسه	design a robot	يصمم انسان الى
feel nervous	يشعر بتوتر	say hello to you	يقول مرحبا ل		

Language Notes

• **remind (ed)** يذكر • **remember (ed)** يتذكر

His face reminds me of his father.
I can't remember anything about the accident.

•**soil** تربة •**land** اليابس - **ground** سطح الارض •**floor** ارضية الحجرة

Areas beside rivers have rich soil.
My brother has bought a large piece of land.
He lost his balance and fell to the ground.
Please, put the boxes on the floor of the room.

•**another** اخر + مفرد • **other** اخرى + جمع • **others** اخرون

Would you like another cup of tea?
Have you got any other dresses?
I don't like this story. I like the other one.
I don't like these books. Let's borrow others / other books.

Reading

SB 28

Robots in our Life

Scientists, have used robots for a long time. Some robots dive under water to study the sea: others are sent inside volcanoes to study places that are dangerous. In 2012, a robot went to another planet to study the soil and gases there.

Personal robots are designed to help people with jobs at home. They include robot Vacuum cleaners to clean floors and lawn mowers to cut the grass in parks and gardens.

Now, an engineer has designed a robot that can recognize people. When you speak, it will answer! It will hear your voice and turn its head in order to look at you. It will say hello to you when you come home and it can read a story to children. It can give a message to the right person in the family. It can even remind you to send your e-mails.

Some robots are designed to have friendly faces so that children will think they are toys. These robots are very useful in hospitals where they can entertain children and help them to feel better.

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If something is …… It means that it's for you or belonging to you

a. public **b. personal** **c. local** **d. international**

2. Personal…… are designed to help people with jobs at home.

a. rabbits **b. robots** **c. mobiles** **d. toys**

3-The twins are so…… It's difficult to know the difference between them.

a. same **b. similar** **c. different** **d. difficult**

4. Your personal robot will…… hello to you when you come home.

a. tell **b. say** **c. speak** **d. talk**

5. …… robots are sent inside volcanoes to study places that are dangerous.

a. Scientific **b. Personal** **c. Space** **d. Vacuum**

6. Some robots are designed to have…… faces so that children will think they are toys.

a. busy **b. friendly** **c. lazy** **d. vacuum**

7. In summer, many tourists wear…… to protect their skin from the hot sun.

a. sun cream **b. umbrellas** **c.wigs** **d. jumpers**

Grammar

Transitive and intransitive verbs الإفعال المتعدية و الإفعال اللازمة

Transitive verbs الافعال المتعدية

الافعال المتعدية لابد ان تتبع بمفعول حتى يكتمل معنى الجملة

Ali bought …….	Ali bought a car .

الافعال المتعدية يتبعها مفعول مباشر او غير مباشر

Omar asked a question.	مفعول مباشر
Omar asked me a question.	مفعول مباشر + مفعول غير مباشر

Transitive verbs + indirect object مفعول غير مباشر + direct object مفعول مباشر

-Ahmed sent me a present. -Mum made me a cake.

Transitive verbs + direct object مفعول مباشر + to / for + Indirect object مفعول غير مباشر

Ali sent an email to me. Mum made a cake for me

Intransitive verbs الافعال اللازمة

الافعال اللازمة لا يتبعها مفعول و تكون الجملة كاملة المعنى

-The baby is sleeping.	-Ahmed runs fast.

هذه الافعال تأخذ حرف الجر **to**

offer	send	write	bring	give	pass	sell	deliver	tell	lend
show	hand	pay							

هذه الافعال تأخذ حرف الجر **for**

keep	leave	buy	get	build	call	save	make	find	bake

Rewrite تدريب

1- Ahmed gave Amal a book. (to)

* Ahmed gave a book to Amal.

2- Ali brought a present for his mum. (A present)

* A present was brought by Ali for his mum.

3- I bought a toy for Sama. (bought Sama)

* I bought Sama a toy.

4- Mum baked us a nice cake. (for)

* Mum baked a nice cake for us.

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I gave …… the pen.

a. to my friend **b. my friend** **c his** **d. for my friend**

2.Salma sent…… a present.

a. mine **b. for me** **c. to me** **d. me**

3. Did you bring…… that smartphone ?

a. hers **b. to her** **c. for her** **d. her**

4. My brother told a nice story……

a. me **b.mine** **c.to me** **d. to mine**

5. The doctor gave…… some medicine.

a. his **b. to him** **c. for him** **d. him**

6. I bought…… a new camera.

a. him **b. to him** **c. for him** **d. of him**

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Maya gave her sister a pen. (to her)
2. The owner sold the house to Ahmed. (soldAhmed)
3. Grandmother baked him a cake. (for him)
4. The class brought Mrs Mona some flowers, (for Mrs Mona)

HOMEWORK

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Khalid and Yasser are talking about travel plans.

Khalid : Hi Yasser! How are you ?

Yasser : Great. I'm going on holiday.

Khalid : (1)……?

Yasser : To Sharm El-Sheikh.
Khalid : (2).....?
Yasser : I'm going there with my family.
Khalid When are you leaving ?
Yasser (3).....
Khalid Have a nice holiday.
Yasser (4).....

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 - He bought ..... a present.
a. his mother **b. for his mother** **c. hers** **d. to his mother**

2- Mum made a cake .....
a. to us **b. for us** **c. us** **d. to ourselves**

3- Sama lent .....
a. to me her book **b. for me her book** **c. me to her book** **d. me her book**

4- Please, send ..... .
a. an email me **b. to me an email** **c. me an email** **d. an email for me**

5- People use ..... to keep their houses clean.
a. lawn mowers **b. ovens** **c.vacuum cleaners** **d. fridges**

6- Yara gave ..... her homework.
a. to the teacher **b. the teacher** **c. for the teacher** **d. the teacher for**

7- Some robots ..... under water to study the sea.
a. drive **b.dive** **c. recognise** **d.fly**

8- Can you pass ..... please?
a. me the salt **b. the salt me** **c. to me the salt** **d. for me the salt**

9- Scientists study ..... to know if they are dangerous.
a. vocal **b. valves** **c. volcanoes** **d. voices**

10- Islam showed ..... his photos.
a. to us **b. us to** **c. us** **d. for us**

3-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Yasser bought his father a book. (for)
2- The owner sold the house to Ahmed. (sold Ahmed)
3. Our grandfather told us an interesting story, (to us)
4-She sent us an email, (to)
5- Did you buy me a smart phone? (for me)
6. Maya gave a pen to her sister, (gave her sister)
7- His grandmother baked him a cake. (for him)
8-Did you lend your friend a ruler? (to)
9-The waiter brought some juice for us. (brought us)
10 Could you buy me that watch ? (for me)
11. Salma gave her brother a cake. (to her)

4-Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences on one of the following:

1- Robots in our lives 2- Kinds of robots 3-an inventor you like most

Inventors

LESSONS 3.4.5

completely	تمامًا	wooden	خشبي	flood	فيضان
starve	يموت جوعا	test	اختبار	season	فصل
papyrus	البردي	transport	النقل	goods	بضائع
present	هدية – يقدم	ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	early boats	القوارب البدائية
emphasise	يؤكد على	environment	البيئة	invent	يخترع
calendar	تقويم	experiment	تجربة	several	عديد
expert	خبير	owner	مالك	winner	فائز
fantastic	رائع	steam	بخار	product	منتج
rope	حبل	sailor	بحار	guest	ضيف
design	يصمم	crop	محصول	steamship	سفينة بخارية
invention	اختراع	plant	يزرع- نبات	research	بحث
science competition		مسابقة علمية		cross	يعبر
twentieth century		القرن العشرين		wood	خشب
Science Museum		متحف العلوم		idea	فكرة

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
blow	تهب	blew	blown
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
sell	يبيع	sold	sold

كلمات متشابهة

taste	يتذوق	test	اختبار
boat	قارب	ship	☐سفينة
role	دور	rule	☐قاعدة

Word	☐كلمة	Opposite	☐عكسها
powerful	قوي	powerless	عاجز
male	ذكر	female	انثى
simple	بسيط	complex	معقد
large	كبير	small	صغير

PREPOSITION

for this reason	لهذا السبب	along the river	على امتداد النهر
make..... from	يصنع من	expert at/in/on	خبير في
up the river	اعلى النهر	Part of	جزء من
prize for	جائزة ل	idea for	فكرة ل

Expression تعبيرات هامة

do research	يقوم ببحث	have a problem with	لديه مشكلة مع
move forwards	يتحرك للامام	in some way	بطريقة ما
travel across the sea	يسافر عبر البحر	in around 4000 BCE	فى حوالى
pick up dust	يزيل التراب	do an experiment	يعمل تجربة

Language Notes

* search يبحث	• research بحث
I searched for my wallet but I didn't find it.	
I did some research into the history of Egypt.	

•work on يعمل على 'work for يعمل لصالح 'work with يعمل مع
•work as يعمل ك •work out يحل مسالة
They always work on computers at their school.
He work for a big company.
A jeweller work with silver and gold.
He works as a teacher.
No one could work out this question. It is very hard.

Listening

SB 30

Teacher :So, Let's talk about the science competition. You must remember how important it is for you to enter. You learned so much about scientific research.

Student :I have got a lot of ideas of some inventions already.

Teacher :That is very good. But don't forget that the idea is the easiest part of a project. One you got an idea, you have to think about the design, then you have to do several experiments and test them to see if they work.

Student :What kind of ideas are you looking for in the competition?

Teacher :It is necessary for you to be something different, do some research and find out if your idea is completely new.

Student :It is difficult to think of something to invent.

Teacher :It can be difficult at first I agree. I agree, it might be easier to think of a problem that you want to solve. First, it is important to remember to look on something that you are really interested in and don't forget there is a prize. The winners will visit the science museum where they will present their designs to people who work there.

Reading

SB 31

The Invention of Ships and Sails

In ancient Egypt, like today, most of our important cities were built along the Nile. For this reason, people have used the river for transport for many years. The people also became experts at building boats.

Early boats

* In around 4000BCE, the ancient Egyptians made small boats from Papyrus. They used Oars to move them forwards.

Wooden boats and Sails

* Later, they used wood tied together with ropes to build boats. They also invented the first sail in order to move faster up the river when the wind blow.

Transport ships

* In around 2500 BCE, people began to build larger and stronger boats. Ships could travel across the sea to sell goods in other countries.

Steam and oil

* Ships needed the wind until the early 1800s, when the first steamships began to cross the seas.
* In the twentieth century, oil was used to take powerful ships around the world.

Reading

WB 21

The ancient Egyptian year had three seasons. It's essential toremember that calendars were very important in ancient Egypt. Farmers needed to know when to plant crops.
In addition,they needed to know when the Nile was going to flood.
I want to emphasise how important food was at this time. Don't forget that many people would starve if the crops did not grow. The Egyptians invented the calendar so that they could plant their crops at the right time. The calendar had twelve months of thirty days, which is 360 days a year. They also had five holidays!

Reading

WB 22

James Dyson was born in 1947. In the 1960s, Dyson studied how to design things at a university in London. In the 1970s,Dyson began to invent machines to help people in the house.
His most famous invention is a new kind of vacuum cleaner. It was different because it did not need bags to pick up the dust. Dyson won many prizes for his invention. Since this time, Duson has invented other things to make things easier for people and he has also written books about his work.

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- What's the name of the ..... who made the first radio?

a. visitor **b. inventor** **c. discoverer** **d. baker**

2- we When water boils, we can see .....

a. **steel** b. **wheel** c. **ice** d. **steam**

3- The film was …… I really liked it.

a. **boring** b. **bad** c. **hungry** d. **fantastic**

4- The sailor got into the boat and used the …… to sail across the lake.

a. **sails** b. **seats** c. **windows** d. **doors**

5- The …… will be delivered to the shops after ten days.

a. **good** b. **well** c. **goods** d. **voice**

6- Many people would …… if the crops didn't grow.

a. **start** b. **starve** c. **stir** d. **export**

7- Scientific …… is very important.

a. **search** b. **problem** c. **steam** d. **research**

Language functions

Emphasising a point التأكيد على فكرة

You must remember to + inf مصدر الفعل
You must remember that + subject فاعل + verb فعل
Don't forget to + inf مصدر الفعل
Don't forget that + subject فاعل+ verb فعل
It's necessary to -It's important to مصدر الفعل

You must remember to describe characters well.
You must remember that grammar rules are important.
Don't forget to study your lessons.
Don't forget that English is very important.
It is necessary / important to study hard.

Classwork

. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1.You want to remind your mother to buy you a book.
2. Ask your sister not to forget to switch off the lights before sleeping.
3. Remind your brother to write his homework.
4. You want to emphasise that studying hard is necessary.

HOMEWORK

I· Finish the following dialogue:

A teacher is asking a student about James Dyson who invented the new vacuum cleaner.

Teacher : Do you know anything about James Dyson?
Student : Yes, I know him well.
Teacher : ..(1) …… ?
Student : He was born in 1947.
Teacher : ..(2) ……?
Student : He was an inventor.

Teacher : He invented the vacuum cleaner, isn't he?
Student : ..(3) ……
Teacher : Well done! You are a very …(4)…… .

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- Your classmate doesn't correct his mistakes. Emphasise that point.
2- Your brother always goes late to his work. Advise him to to go earty.
3- Your sister doesn't like to eat vegetables with meals. Tell her that vegetables are essential.

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

"Necessity is the mother of invention." In order to deal with this, you've to talk about the invention and inventor. In this passage, we'll talk about the vacuum cleaner. It is also known as a sweeper. It is a device that usually picks up dust and dirt from floors and other surfaces. In 1978, James Dyson faced a problem with his vacuum. Five years later, he invented the world's first bagless vaccum cleaner. **His** cleaner was first sold in Japan. It impressed the Japanese with its performance. James Dysan improved the vacuum cleaner in a way that we all feel better when using it. Inventions are very important and useful. We should use our mind and create.

A- answer the following questions:

1- What does a vacuum do?
2- Find out a word from the passage that gives the same meaning as "without bag".
3- Do you think that Dyson helped people or not?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Dyson is a/an ……

a. inventor **b. invention** **c. sweaper** **d. cleaner**

5- The underlined pronoun His refers to……

a. vacuum cleaner **b. Dyson** **c. Japan** **d. dust**

4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maha gave…… a book.

a her sister **b. for her sister** **c. to her sister** **d. hers**

2. Maher asked …… a question.

a. for me **b.me** **c.mine** **d.to me**

3. Nader's aunt baked a cake…… him.

a. with **b.of** **c.for** **d.at**

4. Lawn…… is a machine to cut the grass in a garden or a park.

a. mover **b. cooker** **c. mower** **d. cleaner**

5…… people is easy if you saw them before.

a. Inviting **b. Recognising** **c. Helping** **d. Saving**

6 . …… helped the ancient Egyptians to know the right time of growing crops.

a. Boats **b. Calendars** **c. Machines** **d. Sails**

7. There are robot vacuum…… that clean the floors of the house.

a) clean **b) cleaners** **c) cleaning** **d) cleans**

8. This robot is used to…… the work properly.

a) make **b) do** **c) see** **d) sell**

9. In the past ships needed the wind to help them to…… across the sea.

a) fly **b) drive** **c) sell** **d) sail**

10. These are Basmala's books. Please can you give…… to her?

a) it **b) them** **c) to it** **d) to them**

5-Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Have you bought me this dictionary ?	(for)
2. The carpenter gave the table to Ali.	(gaveAli)
3. A mobile was given to Ahmed.	(Ahmed.....)
4. I bought my little brother a toy.	(for)
5. I sent Adel an email,	(to Adel)
6. Remember to do sport every day.	(forget)
7- The class brought their teacher some flowers,	(for their teacher)
8- Mazen sold his friend his car.	(to)

6-Write an email of seven(7) sentences about one of the following:

- an email to your friend who is entering a story competition
- an email to your brother to tell him about the types of robots

^B Write a paragraph of Seven (7) sentences on one of the following

1- The invention of boats and ships
2- An important invention
3- A famous inventor you admire.
4 -The use of robot.

Revision B

Reading

SB 33

The Nobel prizes

Alfred Nobel was born in 1833. He was a chemist and a great inventor. When he was a young child, Alfred couldn't go to school for many years because his parents didn't have enough money. Later, he was able to study because his father found a good job. Alfred was a very intelligent person. He could speak many languages, such as English, French and German. He also liked to read scientific books and to write stories.When he died in 1896, he left a lot of money so that people could start the Nobel Prizes. These are awards for people's achievements. It must be very rewarding to win these prizes. They are for people from all over the world who have had a great level of success in medicine, science and writing. The winners get both a small trophy and money. There is also an award for people who have worked to make the world a better place. To remember Alfred Nobel, the awards are given on December 10th, which is the day he died. Naguib Mahfouz was an Egyptian writer who won the 1988 Nobel Prize for writing. He wrote 34 novels and more than 300 short stories. Another Egyptian, Ahmed Zewail, won a Nobel Prize for chemistry in 1999.

Listening

SB 34

Adam : Hi, Faris. What are you doing?
Faris : I'm reading about Dr Ali Mostafa Musharafa. there might be a question about him in my maths lesson next week.
Adam : What does it say?
Faris : Dr Ali Mostafa Musharafa was able to work out some really difficult problems in maths and science, Furthermore, there is laboratory that has his name at Cairo University. He worked at the university for many years.
Adam : Yes, I've heard about him. He did very well at school.'

Faris : Did he?
Adam : Yes, at that time he was the youngest person to pass exams at his school. He was only sixteen.
Faris : That's interesting. It says here that he went to university in England. He became the first Egyptian to become a doctor of science. When he was in London, he was also able to write articles for important science magazines.
Adam : What did he do after that?
Faris : He became a professor of mathematics at Cairo University,
Adam : That's a great achievement. Do you think that he was a genius?
Faris : I don't know, but I am sure he was very intelligent.

Practice Test 2 a

1. Finish the following dialogue:

Adam and Faris are talking about Dr Alii Moustafa Musharrafa.

Adam : Hi, Faris. What are you doing ?
Faris : I'm reading about Dr Ali Moustafa Musharrafa.
Adam : (1) .....?
Faris : Dr Musharrafa was able to work out some really difficult problems in maths and science.
Adam : (2)..... What else does the article say ?
Faris : It says here that he was the first Egyptian to become a doctor of science.
Adam : That's a great achievement! (3)..... ?
Faris : I'm not sure but he was definitely really smart.
Adam : (4) .....
Faris : I agree. We should do our best to be like him.

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your mother asks you how you did on your English exam. Express certainty.
2. Your friend asks you if you met the writer who visited your school last week. This was not possible because you were ill.
3. You are in a busy street with your younger brother. You advise him not to walk too close to the road.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

There have been hotels for hundreds of years, but they might be different in the future. Usually there are friendly people who write your name and address, carry your bags to your room and give you breakfast in the morning. In Japan, there is a hotel where there are no people working at all: all the work **there** is done by robots.

When you first arrive at the hotel to check in, a robot tells you what to do:you should enter information about yourself on a computer. The robot is able to communicate in lots of different languages. You don't need a key for your room because a computer in the door will recognise you. There is even a robot in each room who is able to turn lights on and off and answer simple questions!

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Why are there no people working in this hotel ?
2. Why don't you need a key to your room in this hotel ?
3. What problems do you think you might have in a hotel like this ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. "check in" means .....

a. report that you have arrived **b. sleep** **c. wake up** **d. park your car**

5. The underlined word "there" refers to ……

a. the hotel **b. Japan** **c. the robot** **d. the future**

C. The Reader

4. a. Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. John Manly	a. saved Squire Gordon from the broken bridge.
2. Black Beauty	b. hit the horses hard.
3. Ginger	c. began to respect Squire Gordon.
4.Merrylegs	d. was Squire Gordon's helper.
	e. wanted to teach the boys a lesson about horses.

b. Answer the following questions:

1. What made Black Beauty's journey with Squire Gordon and John difficult ?
2. What happened at the bridge ?
3. Who started the fire at the stables ?
4. Why do you think that John was able to take the horses from the burning stables ?
5. Why do you think that moving horses when there is a fire is very hard ?

0. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I gave …… the message.

a. my sister **b. for my sister** **c. to my sister** **d.hers**

2. There is a lot of traffic today. We …… be late.

a. must **b. should** **c. might** **d. won't**

3. The maths homework was very difficult. Were you …… do it ?

a. could **b. able to** **c.able** **d.can**

4. It is…… to take your passport when you go to another country.

a. easy **b. essential** **c. enjoyable** **d. enormous**

5. Ola is always …… She will do very well in her exams.

a. noisy **b. lazy** **c. hard-working** **d. exhausted**

6. There are eight …… that go around the sun.

a. plants **b. sails** **c. planets** **d. stars**

6. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I couldn't find the pen that you lost. (able)
2. Perhaps I'll wear a jacket today. I'm not sure. (might)
3. Adel might visit us tomorrow. (I'm not sure)

7. Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- a form of technology that is most useful to you 2- someone you know who is a genius

Practice Test 2 b

I. Finish the following dialogue:

Salem and Omar are talking outside a classroom in their school.

Salem : Who is our science teacher talking to in the classroom ?
Omar : She is talking to the scientist who is giving us a talk next week.
Salem : Oh, yes, I forgot.
Omar : (1)..... It's essential.
Salem : Yes, you're right, it is very important. (2)..... ?
Omar : (3)..... I think he's going to talk about useful robots.
Salem : That's a very interesting topic. (4)..... ?
Omar : Maybe he'll bring a robot with him!

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. A friend says that Athens is bigger than London. You don't think this is correct.
2. Your friend thinks he saw a cat in the hotel. You are certain that cats aren't allowed in the hotel.
3. A friend asks you for the best way to revise before the test.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many famous people were amazing when they were children. Mozart was able to play music when he was three and could write music when he was five. Judit Polgar is a great chess player. She was able to win chess games against some adults when she was twelve years old and she won chess competitions when she was fifteen.

Karl Benz went to university to study to be an engineer when he was fifteen and he later invented the car. And the great scientist Marie Curie taught herself to read Russian and French when she was four. She could also help her older brothers and sisters with their maths homework! However, some people who do amazing things when **they** are children become ordinary adults: not all of them are able to become famous.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Karl Benz go to university ?
2. Who taught Marie Curie to read Russian and French ?
3. Why do you think that many amazing children are not able to become famous when they grow up ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "ordinary" means .....

a. not helpful **b. amazing** **c. special** **b. not special**

5. The underlined word "they" refers to .....

a. Mozart and Polgar **b. some adults** **c. scientists** **d. Benz and Curie**

C. The Reader

4. a. Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. Squire Gordon's friends	a. didn't listen to Black Beauty when he called out.
2. The rider in the stable	b. walked out of the stable when Black Beauty called her.
3. Ginger	c. smoked a cigarette and caused a fire.
4. Mrs Gordon	d. were amazed because John saved the horses.
	e. went with Squire Gordon to visit some friends.

b. Answer the following questions:

1. Why didn't Black Beauty return Squire Gordon and John home the way they came ?

2. Why didn't John drive Black Beauty over the bridge ?
3. "And thank you. Black Beauty. You saved us." Who said this ? What does it show about the kind of man he is ?
4. Why do you think that the horses wanted to stay in the stables although there was a fire ?
5. What happened when John came to take the horses from the stables ?

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. ..... you speak English when you were six ?
a. Were **b. Do** **c. Able** **d. Could**
2. Eman sent ..... an email.
a. for me **b. me** **c. mine** **d. to me**
3. Wear a coat. It..... rain today.
a. might **b. must** **c. can't** **d. mustn't**
4. Use the..... cleaner to clean the kitchen floor.
a. lawn **b. mower** **c. vacuum** **d. oar**
5. I'd like to..... you to my house this Saturday.
a. invent **b. interview** **c. interrupt** **d. invite**
6. That man has a very loud..... I can hear him from across the road!
a. voice **b. face** **c. graph** **d. ability**

6. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I know that it is my pen. It is the only one that is red. (must)
2. Mona wasn't able to finish the project yesterday, (could)
3. Hassan is interested in reading. He also writes short stories. (In addition)

7 . Write an email of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- an email to your teacher explaining why you would like to go to a STEM school
- an email to your friend who is entering a writing competition

All about sport

LESSONS 1 . 2

necessary	ضروري	believe	يعتقد	rahat	راحة اليدين
against	ضد	basketball	كرة السلة	practise	يمارس
basket	سلة	passport	جواز سفر	flute	مزمار
weather	طقس	in order to	لكي	costume	زي تقليدي
century	قرن	theatre	مسرح	tent	خيمة
P.E (physical education)		تربية بدنية		bottom	قاع
court	ملعب (التنس)	weight	وزن	tie	يربط
leather	جلد	measure	يقيس	score	يسجل
history	تاريخ	indoor	داخل مبنى	Inside	داخل
wool	صوف	weigh	يزن	racket	مضرب تنس
rubber	مطاط	expert	خبير	pole	عصا – وتد
horse hair	شعر الخيل	grab	يمسك بعنف	hurry	يسرع
middle	منتصف	wooden	خشبي	Canadian	كندي

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
hold up	يحمل لاعلى	held up	held up
leave	يغادر	left	left
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
throw	يرمى	threw	thrown

كلمات متشابهة

wool	صوف	wall	حائط
weather	طقس	climate	مناخ
century	قرن	country	دولة
history	تاريخ	date	تاريخ اليوم

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
upstairs	الطابق العلوى	downstairs	الطابق السفلى
win	يفوز	lose	يخسر
indoor	داخل مبنى	outdoor	خارج مبنى
bottom	قاع	top	قمة
fill	يملأ	empty	يفرغ
similar	مشابه	different	مختلف

Definitions

poles	عصا	long bits of metal or wood
score	يسجل	what you need to do to win in some sports games
court	ملعب تنس	the place where a tennis or basketball match is played
indoor	داخل مبنى	inside a building

PREPOSITION

wait for	ينتظر	Over the years	عبر السنين
cut off	يفصل	Late for	متاخر على

Expression تعبيرات هامة

By 1500 بحلول 1500	do revision يقوم بالمراجعة at each end عند كل ناحية
In those days فى تلك الايام	do computer studies يدرس علوم الكومبيوتر

Language Notes

• **the + adj** صفة تجمع بعض الصفات بهذه الطريقة

the French the old the young

Some people believe that tennis was invented by the French.

• **made of** مصنوع من مادة لم تتغير • **made from** مصنوع من مادة تغيرت

The shoes are made of leather.

That cake is made from flour.

invent يخترع • discover يكتشف • explore يستكشف
Bill invented the telephone. Columbus discovered America. Columbus landed on America and explored it.

Too + صفة + to + مصدر
It was **too** dark **to** see in the room.

• on time فى الميعاد تماما	- in time فى الوقت المناسب
The weather was bad, but our plane left on time. Hassan was in time for the 8 o'clock train.	

Reading

SB 35

Sports History

Some experts believe that tennis was first an Egyptian sport, because the world racket is very similar to the Arabic word rahat (hands). Other people believe that it was invented by the French in the eleventh or twelfth century.

By the thirteenth century, there were as many as 1,800 indoor courts, so people didn't have to wait for good weather in order to play. in those days, players had to hit the ball with their hands. By 1500, the game was played with a wooden racket.

The very first tennis balls were made from leather filled with horse hair or wool. Today, tennis balls are rubber and have to measure 6.54-7.3 centimeter across the middle and weigh 56-59.49 grams.

Basketball was invented in 1891 by a Canadian P.E teacher, James Naismith. In that year, he though;" I must find a new sport for my students to play in winter, because it is too cold to play outside." The New game could be played inside any weather.

James Naismith tied two baskets to poles at each end of the court. A player had to throw the ball into the basket in order to score. At first, before the bottoms of the baskets were cut off, a player had to take the ball out of the basket after he or she scored. The game is now very popular, although you must practise every day to be good at it.

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- In games like tennis, you use a …… to hit the ball.

a.rocket **b. racket** **c. rock** **d. pocket**

2- we We can use …… to hold up a tent.

b. poles **b. signs** **c. costumes** **c.flutes**

3- Ronaldo …… two goals in yesterday's match.

a kicked **b. scored** **c. held** **d.grabbed**

4- The tyres of cars are made of ……

a.paper **b. plastic** **c. rubber** **d. metal**

5- You should …… more revision.

a.make **b. do** **c. play** **d. stay**

6- What is the …… like today?

a. climate **b. weather** **c. season** **d.whether**

7-…… are long bits of metal or wood to which you can tie things.

a. Pools **b. Poles** **c. Bowls** **d.Pills**

8. Chess can be played inside a building, so it's an…… game.

a. indoor **b. outdoor** **c. indoors** **d. outdoors**

9. You need to …… points to win at basketball.

a. kick **b. score** **c. hold** **d. grab**

104. Places where a tennis or basketball match is played are called ……

a. pools **b. courts** **c. gardens** **d. fields**

Grammar

Obligation and necessity التعبير عن الإلزام و الضرورة

have to / has to / had to من الضرورى

Present مضارع	Past ماضى
(I – We – They – You) Have to + المصدر (He – She –It) Has to + المصدر	had to + المصدر
النفى	النفى
don't have to + المصدر عدم الضرورة doesn't have to ليس من الضرورى او الالزام	didn't have to + المصدر
السؤال	النفى
Do – Does + فاعل + have to + المصدر	Did + فاعل + have to + المصدر

We **have to** go to school on time. She **has to** get a passport to travel abroad

I **had to** finish my homework so I couldn't go to the park.

We **don't have to** hurry. We aren't late. She **doesn't have to** take a taxi as she is still early

We **didn't have to** get up early last Friday as it was a holiday.

Do you **have to** do the job now? **Did** you **have to** borrow money yesterday?

المصدر + ممنوع- غير مسموح mustn't / لابد – يجب ان mustفاعل

(كلمة استفهام) Must + فاعل + المصدر

We **must** go to school on time. He **mustn't** smoke in hospitals.

What **must** I **buy** for my friends?

Rewrite تدريب

1- It is necessary for him to come early. (must) (has to)

He has to come early. * He must come early.

2- You don't have to hurry. We have to much time. (necessary)

* It isn't necessary to hurry. We have too much time.
3- You have to be at work at 8 o'clock. (necessary)
* It is necessary for you to be at work at 8 o'clock.
4- I had to see a doctor. (necessary)
* It was necessary for me to see a doctor.
5- You aren't allowed to smoke in hospitals. (mustn't)
* You mustn't smoke in hospitals.
6- It is forbidden for players to hurt their opponents. (mustn't)
* Players mustn't hurt their opponents.
7- It's against the law to smoke here. (mustn't)
* You mustn't smoke here.
8- It is important for students to wear a uniform. (have to)
* Students have to wear a uniform.

Classwork

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Did you ..... do P.E. when you were at school?
a. had to **b. have to** **c. must** **d. has to**
2- ..... Sameh have to study today?
a. Do **b. Must** **c. Does** **d. Mustn't**
3- "No Parking" means you ..... park here.
a. don't have to **b. mustn't** **c. must** **d. have to**
4- Before tennis players used rackets, they..... hit the ball with their hands.
a. had to **b. have to** **c. must** **d. has to**
5- wb Where does your father ..... go every day?
a. had to **b. have to** **c. must** **d. has to**
6- You ..... play football in the road; it is dangerous.
a. must **b. have to** **c. mustn't** **d. don't have to**
7- You ..... arrive early at school. Just come on time.
a. must **b. mustn't** **c. don't have to** **d. have to**

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- It's not necessary to buy a jacket, you have three jackets. (don't)
2- It's necessary for him to buy a mobile phone, (must)
3- Was it necessary for you to do P.E. when it was very hot? (have to)
4- It was not necessary for her to buy a new dress, (didn't)

HOMEWORK

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Alaa and Magdy are talking about basketball.

Alaa : Hi Magdy! Do you know the history of basketball ?
Magdy : Hi! Yes, I do.
Alaa : (1)..... ?
Magdy : Basketball was invented by James Naismith.
Alaa : Is it very popular now ?
Magdy : (2).....
Alaa : Where can you play it ?

Magdy : (3).....
Alaa : (4).....?
Magdy : I play it with my friends.

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-Which of the following can you use to hold up a tent .....

a. Poles **b. Signs** **c. Costumes** **d. Flutes**

2. I didn't have to cook meals, but I..... get up early.

a. have to **b. has to** **c.had to** **d.doesn't have to**

3. When my friends..... camping, they had to light a fire.

a. came **b.went** **c.rode** **d.had**

4. What must you..... in the evening ?

a. do **b.does** **c.did** **d. doing**

5. You mustn't park here. It's against the.....

a. level **b. line** **c. low** **d. law**

6. People didn't..... wait for good weather in order to play.

a. have **b. has to** **c. had to** **d. have to**

7- Long ago, tennis players ..... wear special shoes on tennis courts,

a. doesn't have to **b. didn't have to** **c. won't have to** **d. don't have to**

8- Today, tennis balls ..... weigh 56-59.49 grams.

a. had to **b. have to** **c. having to** **d. has to**

9- My mother really ..... delicious meals.

a. kicks **b. cooks** **c. loses** **d. looks**

10- ..... is used to make clothes.

a. Wood **b.Iron** **c.Wool** **d.Wall**

11. ..... you have to go to school yesterday?

a. Did **b. Do** **c. Does** **d. Have**

12- A ..... is a place where you play tennis or basketball.

a. theatre **b. museum** **c. court** **d. cinema**

2- My sister ..... finish all her homework today.

a. have to **b. mustn't** **c.'hadn't** **d. has to**

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

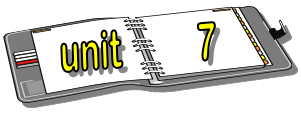
1.You are not allowed to get on a train without a ticket, (mustn't)
2. It is necessary for you to do your homework, (have to)
3. It was necessary for Mona to see a doctor last week. (had)
4- It is necessary that I remember to turn off the lights before I go to bed. (must)
5- She must study hard to pass the exam. (has to)
6- It was not necessary for us to buy a new computer, (didn't)
7- Is it necessary for me to come here every day? (Do)
8- Does your father have to work on Fridays? (necessary)
9- You mustn't make noise in the library, (allowed)
10. Was it necessary to get up early yesterday? (Did)
11. It is important for basketball players to score to win. (have to)
12. It was not necessary to buy the flowers. Mum has already bought them. (didn't have to)
13. You have to go to school early. (necessary)
14. It is not necessary to hurry. You are not late. (have to)
15. You mustn't smoke here. (allowed)

16. It was necessary for Mai to arrive at school on time. (Mai .....)

17. Is it necessary for Sara to visit her uncle? (Must)

3-Write a paragraph of Seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- your favourite sport 2 - a footballer you like most 3 - How to be good at sport



All about sport

LESSONS 3.4.5

net	شبكة	meaning	المعنى	disagree	لا يتفق
own	يمتلك	apologize	يعتذر	speed-ball	كرة السرعة
comfortable	مريح	yell	يصيح	encourage	يشجع
equipment	معدات	helmet	خوذة	judo	جودو
Greek	يونانى	technology	تكنولوجيا	injured	مصاب
final	نهائى	furthermore	علاوة علي ذلك	opinion	رأى
list	قائمة	area	منطقة	bone	عظمة
part	جزء	however	مع ذلك	no longer	لم يعد
achievements	انجازات	completely	تماما	trophy	تذكار النصر
self-respect	احترام الذات	athlete	رياضى	championship	بطولة
spectator	متفرج	referee	حكم	stadium	استاد
fresh water	ماء عذب	competition	منافسة	opponent	خصم
accurately	بدقة	special shoes	احذية خاصة	event	حدث
winner	فائز	ground	ملعب	touch	يلمس
leaf	ورقة شجر	seat	مقعد	different	مختلف
the Olympic Games		الالعاب الاوليمبية		unkind words	كلمات غير مهذبة

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
hurt	يؤذى	hurt	hurt
hold	يقيم	held	held

كلمات متشابهة

between	بين (اثنين)	among	اكثر من اثنين
expert	خبير	export	☐يصدر
event	حدث	accident	☐حادثة
list	قائمة	menu	قائمة طعام

Word	☐كلمة	Opposite	☐عكسها
agree	يتفق	disagree	يختلف
modern	حديث	ancient	قديم
north	شمال	south	جنوب
Ask	يسال	answer	يجيب

PREPOSITION

Expert on	خبير في	Agree with	يتفق مع
Congratulate on	يهنئ على	Turn on	يشغل
Apologise for	يعتذر على	Turn off	يفصل

Expression تعبيرات هامة

Ask for	يطلب	do wrong	يخطئ	lose a match	يخسر مباراة	at all	على الاطلاق
Held the Olympic Games	ينظم الالعاب الاوليمبية			go camping	يقيم معسكر		
(be) a good sport	ذو روح رياضية عالية			since then	منذ ذلك الحين		

Language Notes

• **Although** بالرغم من	• **However** و مع ذلك
Although he is poor, he is happy,	He is poor. However, he is happy,
• **In addition** بالاضافة	• **In addition to** بالاضافة الى
Ali is so kind. In addition, he is hardworking.	
In addition to helping mum, I did my homework.	
We have ordered fish in addition to fruit.	

• **How + adjective** صفة	ما مقدار الصفة
How tall are you?	How hard are the games for today's athletes?
• **used to + inf.** مصدر	اعتاد ان
Aya used to drink milk when she was young.	
• **enjoy + V-ing / Noun.**	
I enjoy playing football.	I enjoy football.
Question tag (معناه اليس كذلك) السؤال المزيل	
* Ali is a teacher, isn't he?	• That hasn't changed, has it?
Light خفيف – ضوء – مصباح – فاتح – يشعل	
break يكسر – فترة راحة	
Can يستطيع – علبة صفيح	

Listening

SB 37

The Olympic Games

Professor Younis is an expert on the history of the Olympic Games .

boy: When were the first Olympic Games held?

Professor:The first Olympic Games were held in Greece in 776 BCE so, it is a very old competition.

Boy:Have the games changed a lot since then?

Professor:Oh ! yes, There have been many changes. In the ancient Greek Olympics, there were between seven and nine sports. They are completely different now. Some sports are no longer part of the modern games.

Boy: How many sports are part of the games now?

Professor:Well, The list keeps changing, but in 2016, there were forty-one sports. Another area where there have been big changes is in the stadiums, they become huge and very modern. Furthermore, stadiums all have news technology. So, their achievements can be managed more accurately.

Boy:How different were the ancient Greek stadiums?

Professor:Ancient Greek stadiums were not very comfortable and there wasn't even fresh water for the spectators. These days, spectators from all over the world come and watch events, but in ancient Greece only Greek spectators could watch the games.

Boy:How hard is it for today's athletes?

Professor:They work very hard. In the past, athletes only used to practise hard for about ten months before the games. These days they must work hard for years before the games.

Boy:What about the prizes the athletes win?- that hasn't changed, has it?

Professor:Yes, it has. Today the athletes win medals for first, second or third place. This is very different from the past when winners were given only leaves to wear on their heads.

Boy:How often were the games held in the past?

Professor:During ancient times, they were held every four years in the summer and always in the same place in Greece. However, today the Olympics are held in different countries every time. Although there have been changes, it is always a great achievement for athletes to compete for their countries at the Olympics that hasn't changed at all.

Reading

SB 38

In 1984. the Egyptian Mohamed All Rashwan was in the final of the World judo Championship. His opponent was a Japanese man, Yasuhiro Yamashita. Before the game, Yasuhiro hurt his right Leg, but Mohamed did not touch his injured leg, although this would have helped him win. He did not think this was, kind.Mohamed lost the match, but he won his self-respect.

Reading

WB 29

Volleyball

In this sport, you have a high net and a ball. Each team has between four and six players. You have to hit the ball to your opponent. The opponent has to hit the ball back to your side ofthe net. They can also hit the ball to players on their own team.Each team can hit the ball three times. Teams have to hit the ball with their hands or arms. The ball cannot touch the ground. A team scores when the opponent does not hit the ball back, or if the ball touches the ground on the opponent's side of the net.

Classwork

I-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- A …… is a place where you can watch sports events.
a. garden **b. cinema** **c. stadium** **d. theatre**

2- Mariam got a …… for winning the sports competition.
a present **b. trophy** **c. metal** **d. price**

3- In the past Olympic Games, the winners were given only …… to wear on their heads.
a. shirts **b. balls** **c. leaves** **d. blouses**

4- Many teams are …… for the cup this year.
a. completing **b. competing** **c. climbing** **d. jumping**

5- Hassan no …… lives in Giza.
a. taller **b. bigger** **c. longer** **d. happier**

6- The little boy was badly …… in the accident.
a. driven **b. injured** **c. made** **d. arrived**

7 - There were about 20.000 …… at the football match.
a. players **b. spectators** **c. trainers** **d. teams**

8- Where are the Olympic Games……
a. made **b. built** **c. held** **d. designed**

Language functions

Contrasting information تناقض المعلومات

Although بالرغم من / **However** و مع ذلك/ **but** لكن

Although he is ill , he went to work. I bought the mobile **although** it was very expensive.
He ran fast. **However** , he missed the bus. He studied hard **but** he got bad marks.

Rewrite تدريب

1. He is tired. **However**, he studies a lot. (Although)
* **Although** he is tired , he studies a lot.
2. She wanted to bake a cake. She didn't have any eggs. (However)
* She wanted to bake a cake. However, she didn't have any eggs.
3. They got up early, but they didn't catch the bus. (Although)
* Although they get up early , they didn't catch the bus.

Classwork

I. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your favourite team loses an important match. You're angry.
2. Your father got a good job and it was uncomfortable.
3. Your sister studied well, but she didn't come first.

2-Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I really enjoy playing speed-ball. I don't have any time to practise it. (Although)
2. Although he is clever, he gets low marks. (However)

HOMEWORK

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed talks to his P.E. teacher.

Ahmed : Could I ask you some questions?
Teacher :..(1) ……
Ahmed : .(2) ……?
Teacher : To be fit, you can play tennis.
Ahmed : .(3) ……?
Teacher : To be a good tennis player, you must practise everyday.
Ahmed : Every day? But I have much homework to do every day.
Teacher : That is the only way.
Ahmed : Thank you, sir.
Teacher : .(4) ……

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You are asked about the difference between cities in the past and today. Express contrast.
2. The referee showed you a yellow card however you didn't do anything wrong. You reply.
3. You ask your friend about his favourite champion.
4- Your friend has won a gold medal.
5- You express your opinion of the match you have just watched.
6- Your friend asks what you used to play when you were young.

3- Read the following, then answer the questions

Have you ever wondered how the sport of surfing was invented? Although riding the waves is popular all around the world today, few people realise that **it** has been practised in the south seas for hundreds of years. In fact, it was not just a sport but a way of travel.

In the 1770s, the British explorer James Cook reported seeing people practising the sport of surfing in Tahiti. Surfing grew in popularity, but in 1915, it was practised officially, when a famous Hawaiian swimmer introduced the sport to Australia.

Whether you are a professional surfer or just enjoy bodysurfing, surfing is a very exciting sport, both to take part in and to watch.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- What was surfing originally for?
2- What does the underlined word (it) refer to?
3- What was James Cook?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Surfing was introduced to Australia by a/an ……
a. Egyptian teacher b. Australian driver c. Hawaiian swimmer d. American player
5- Surfing is a ……sport all around the world.
a. boring b. famous c. stupid d. terrible

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 - You …… be at school on time. It is a rule.
a- shouldn't b. have to c. has to d. mustn't
2- …… Hana have to visit Luxor with her family?

a. Must **b. Do** **c. Does** **d. Can**

3- I enjoy watching tennis on TV. …… , I never play it.

a- However **b. in addition** **c. So** **d. For**

4- You …… play with matches. It's dangerous.

a- must **b. mustn't** **c. have to** **d. don't have to**

5- …… are long bits of metal or wood.

a- Poles **b. Balls** **c. Books** **d. Markets**

6- I'll have a short …… for lunch, then start again at three o'clock.

a. rain **b. break** **c. train** **d. guard**

7. What does mother…… do before going on a trip ?

a. has to **b. have to** **c. must** **d. had to**

8. Soha…… brush her teeth before sleeping.

a. have to **b. hasn't to** **c.must** **d. have to**

9. My uncle waited…… the bus about half an hour.

a. at **b.with** **c.for** **d.of**

10. To win a sports game, you need to…… many goals.

a. kick **b. score** **c.hold** **d.grab**

11. …… can be used to hold up a tent.

a. Songs **b. Costumes** **C.Poles** **d. Flutes**

12. Hassan is a very good athlete. He wants to…… in the next Olympic Games.

a. repeat **b. compete** **c.beat** **d. treat**

6. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets togive the same meaning:

1- It is necessary for Mahmoud to come early, (must)

2- It is not necessary for me to study today, (have to)

3- The boys had to buy tickets before they travelled, (necessary)

4. You are not allowed to smoke here. (mustn't)

5. He is tall, but he can't play basketball. (However)

6. Ahmed enjoys teaching, but he doesn't work as a teacher. (Although)

7. Drivers aren't allowed to park in front of hospitals, (mustn t)

8. Although our teacher was very ill, he came to school. (However)

9. It was necessary for Nader to hurry. He was late for school. (had to)

7-Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences on one of the following:

1- Mohamed Ali Rashwan is a good example 2- Sports at schools

- a sport you like most

Write an email of the seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- an email to your English friend telling him about your favourite team
- an email to your brother telling him what he has to do every day at school

How we learn

LESSONS 1 . 2

amazing	مدهش	things	اشياء	sailor	بحار
great	عظيم	athlete	رياضي	environment	البيئة
lying	النوم	hobby	هواية	washing up	غسيل ملابس
enjoyable	ممتع	recycle	يعيد تدوير	control	يتحكم
nature	طبيعة	drawing	الرسم	feelings	مشاعر
certainly	بالتاكيد	breathing	التنفس	music	موسيقى
intelligence	ذكاء	balance	توازن	muscles	عضلات
intelligent	ذكي	diagram	رسم تخطيطي	bottle	زجاجة
physical exercise		تدريب بدني		others	الاخرون

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
Mean	يعني	meant	meant
find	يجد	found	found
think	يعتقد	thought	thought

كلمات متشابهة

physical	بدني	physician	طبيب
balance	توازن	palace	قصر
way	طريقة	weigh	يزن
sale	اوكازيون	sail	يبحر

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
intelligent	ذكي	stupid	غبي
healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي
certain	متاكد	uncertain	غير متاكد

Definitions

balance	توازن	being able to stand or move without falling
sailor	بحار	someone who sails on boats or ships
control	يتحكم	to make someone or something do what you want

PREPOSITION

wait for	ينتظر	Over the years	عبر السنين
cut off	يفصل	Late for	متاخر على

Expression تعبيرات هامة

Have an intelligence	يتمتع بالذكاء	do tests	يحل امتحانات	find their way	يجدوا طريقهم
Learn best by	يتعلم افضل بواسطة	across seas	عبر البحار	stand still	يبقى ثابتا

Language Notes

Breathing عملية التنفس	breath النفس	breathe يتنفس

Footballers should control their breathing well.
He took a deep breath and dived.
It is difficult to breath in this room because of smoke.

Good at جيد في	good for مفيد ل

He is good at reading English.
Eating healthy food is good for us.

Reading

SB 40

How intelligent are you?

Being very intelligent can help people to do amazing things. But what makes people intelligent? Albert Einstein was a great scientist, but in fact, he had problems with reading: he certainly was not good at everything.

Experts now think that people can be intelligent in many different ways. For example, you might be intelligent because you are very good at languages, maths or music. Some people are intelligent because they are very good at controlling their bodies. Athletes have this kind of intelligence and they can control their muscles, breathing and balance very well. Other people understand people's feelings, while others might be intelligent because they understand animals and nature. Sailors have an intelligence that makes them good at finding their way across seas or up and down rivers.

If people are intelligent in different ways, it means that they will probably learn things in different ways. Writing words on paper helps some people to learn things. Others prefer to learn by drawing pictures or diagrams. Moving or physical exercise helps some people, while others learn best by working with other people.

Classwork

I-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To ..... is to make someone or something do what you want.
a. invite **b. breathe** **c. control** **d. understand**

2. Training regularly makes your..... very strong and flexible.
a. skin **b. muscles** **c. brain** **d. ears**

3. ..... is taking oxygen and giving out carbon dioxide.
a. Brushing **b. Pumping** **c. Breathing** **d. Training**

4. It's important to..... physical exercises.
a. do **b.make** **c.take** **d.get**

5.Athletes have fantastic..... over their muscles, breathing and balance.
a. move **b. control** **c. problem** **d. difficulty**

6. ..... are pictures or drawings that help some people to learn things.
a. Programmes **b. Diagrams** **c. Muscles** **d. Examples**

7. I have read a/an..... about ways of learning things in my school English magazine.
a. lesson **b.line** **c. article** **d.book**

8. Are you ready..... help me, Ali ?
a. to **b.tor** **c.of** **d.at**

Grammar

The gerund (V+ ing) اسم الفعل

Playing , eating , swimming

الاستخدمات

1- فاعل او مفعول للجملة

1- **Playing** football is my hobby. 2- I like **reading** stories.

2- يستخدم بعد حروف الجر

1- I'm interested in **watching** TV. 2- Soha is fond of **collecting** stamps.
3- Yasser is worried about **taking** exams.

3- صفة

* I watched an **exciting** film yesterday.

4- يستخدم بعد الكلمات الاتية :

Enjoy –start – like – hate – dislike – practise – finish – go – need – mind – suggest – prefer – deny –avoid – admit – Keep

Busy – interested in – worth – can't help – it's a waste of time – keen on – frightened of – feel like – it's no use – it 's no good – look forward to – fond of – can't stand

Examples

I feel like going to the zoo. He suggested watching a film.
I'm used to getting up early. She enjoys reading.

قواعد الإضافة

1- نضيف ing على جميع الأفعال

Sending – sleeping – writing – reading – eating – playing – studying - trying

2- إذا إنتهى الفعل بحرف e تحذف ثم نضيف ing

Invite – inviting – choose - choosing
See ----- seeing agree -------- agreeing

3- إذا إنتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير

Swimming – stopping – running – grabbing – travelling

4- إذا إنتهى الفعل بحرف ie تحول الى y ثم نضيف ing

Die ----- dying tie -------- tying

Rewrite تدريب

1- Ahmed finds it easy to drive a car. (driving)
Driving a car is easy for Ahmed.
2-It's not good for your health to smoke. (smoking)
Smoking isn't good for your health.
3- Hany finds it interesting to read stories. (Reading)
Reading stories is interesting for Hany.

4- It's difficult to learn Chinese. (Learning)
Learning Chinese is difficult.
5- Sports help you keep fit. (doing)
Doing sports help you keep fit.
6- To pass the final exam is my dream. (passing)
Passing the final exam is my dream.
7- Because he is ill, he didn't go to school. (Being)
Being ill , he didn't go to school.
8- I have a swim once a week. (swimming)
I go swimming once a week.
9- He always catches fish on holiday. (go)
He always goes fishing on holiday.
10- I always like to read short stories. (enjoy)
I always enjoy reading short stories.

Classwork

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Mona thinks that ..... bottles and paper is very important for the environment.
a. recycling **b. recycle** **c. recycles** **d. recycled**
2- Rana is good at ..... the computer.
a. use **b. used** **c. using** **d. to use**
3. ..... by train is comfortable.
a. Travels **b. Travelling** **c. Travelled** **d. Travel**
4- Does ..... to music make you feel happy?
a. listening **b. to listen** **c. listen** **d. listened**
5- I'm looking forward to ..... Osman.
a. see **b. sees** **c. seeing** **d. saw**
6. ..... too quickly is not good for you.
a. Eats **b. Eating** **c. Eat** **d. Ate**
7..... other languages is very useful.
a. Speaking **b. Spoke** **c. Speak** **d. Speaks**
8- Hassan and Hamdy enjoy ..... tennis.
a. play **b. played** **c. playing** **d. plays**

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 -The best way for tourists to see parts of the country is to travel by bus. (Travelling)
2- It's much better to play sports than playing computer games. (Playing sports)
3- It's healthy to eat lots of fruit and vegetables. (Eating)

HOMEWORK

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Marwa about her new mobile phone.

Ahmed : Hi, Marwa. What a wonderful mobile phone!
Marwa : Hi, Ahmed. Thanks.
Ahmed : (1)..... ?
Marwa : I bought it from Cairo shop.
Ahmed : (2)..... ?

Marwa : I bought it yesterday.
Ahmed : How much is it ?
Marwa : (3).....
Ahmed : Is it easy to use ?
Marwa : (4).....

2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... in bed for a long time isn't healthy

a. Lying **b. Diving** **c. Cooking** **d. Dropping**

2..... tennis is Magda's favourite sport.

a. Plays **b. Playing** **c. Played** **d. Play**

3. I lost my..... and fell on the ground.

a. source **b. balance** **c. intelligence** **d. keys**

4. Does..... to music make you feel happy ?

a. listens **b. listen** **c. listened** **d. listening**

5. The..... of my legs hurt me after walking for long.

a. muscles **b. hair** **c. face** **d. squares**

6. Salma is interested in..... TV.

a. watches **b. watching** **c. watched** **d. watch**

7- ..... exercise keeps you fit and helps to reduce stress.

a. Physics **b. Physical** **c. Physician** **d. Physically**

8- I stop ..... football when I feel tired.

a. play **b. playing** **c. player** **d. played**

9- ..... are good at controlling their bodies.

a. Doctors **b. Athletes** **c. Artists** **d. Learners**

10- ..... books in a car sometimes makes Nasser feel ill.

a. Read **b. Reads** **c. To reading** **d. Reading**

11- Seif thanked me for..... him with his homework.

a. help **b. helps** **c. helped** **d. helping**

12- A good teacher can ..... his class.

a. count **b. counter** **c. colour** **d. control**

13- I am looking forward to ..... you.

a. meet **b. meets** **c. met** **d. meeting**

14- He spent much time ..... the book.

a. reading **b. to read** **c. read** **d. reads**

15- My brother is good..... learning languages.

a. on **b.in** **c. at** **d. for**

16. I prefer..... by train, not by bus.

a) travel **b) travels** **c) travelled** **d) travelling**

17 . ..... physical exercise helps basketball players keep fit.

a) Do **b) Doing** **c) To doing** **d) Done**

18. I'm proud ..... Egyptian.

a) to being **b) with being** **c) of being** **d) for being**

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1.Yasser likes to play volleyball. It's his favourite sport. (Playing)
2.Do you feel happy when you listen to music ? (Does)
3. Amin finds it easy to learn new languages. (Learning)

4. I don't like pizza at all. (can't stand)
5. My hope is to travel all over the world, (look forward)
6. Mustafa said that he didn't drink milk yesterday. (denied)
7. It's not healthy to stay up late for a long time. (Staying)
8. Mona likes to read short stories. (Reading)
9. Painting pictures is my favourite hobby, (like)
10- It isn't good for your eyes to watch too much television. (Watching)
11- Marwa finds it difficult to look for the information she needs on the internet, (For Marwa, looking)
12- It has become easierto research information online. (Researching)
13-It's more expensive to travel by train than by bus in England. (Travelling)
14- Nasser sometimes feels ill when he eats beans. (Eating)
15- It is good to help old people. (Helping)
16. Reem likes to learn new languages, (enjoys)
17. It's easy for Hadeer to cook. (Cooking)
18. When you do a sport, you get fit. (Doing)
19. Do you feel happy when you listen to music? (listening)
20. Hany is able to speak English well. (good)

3-Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- what makes you intelligent in your life 2- your favourite hobby 3-Kinds of intelligence

How we learn

LESSONS 3 . 4 . 5

nearly	تقريبا	card	بطاقة	everyone	الجميع
pool	حمام سباحة	body	جسم	informotion	معلومات
relax	يسترخى	sports club	نادى رياضي	recordings	تسجيلات
climate	مناخ	brain	المخ	rules	قواعد
a city person	شخص حضري	only	فقط	difference	اختلاف
puzzle	لغز	physical	بدنى	laptop	لاب توب
arts subjects		المواد الادبية		flying	طيران
science subjects		المواد العلمية		group	مجموعة
a country person		شخص ريفى		minute	دقيقة
online	متصل بالنت	trouble	مشكلة	change	يتغير

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
teach	يدرس	taught	taught
spend	ينفق-يقضى	spent	spent
keep	يحتفظ ب	kept	kept
beat	يهزم	beat	beaten

كلمات متشابهة

share	يشارك	chair	كرسي
brain	مخ	mind	عقل
beach	شاطئ	beats	يهزم
better	افضل	bitter	مر

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها
correctly	بشكل صحيح	wrongly	بشكل خاطئ
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
with	ب – مع	without	بدون
similar	مشابه	different	مختلف

Definitions

puzzle	لغز	a game that you have to think about carefully
I'm afraid	نادم – اسف	used when you are sorry to say something
physical	بدنى	to do with your body
trouble	مشكلة	what is bad about a situation
online	متصل	using the internet

PREPOSITION

work on	يعمل على	Ask about	يسال عن
Prefer to	يفضل ان	Think about	يفكر فى

Expression تعبيرات هامة

Do puzzle يحل لغز	go on the internet يدخل على النت	talk to you both اتحدث اليكما
Offer help يعرض مساعدة	keep healthy يحافظ على صحته	

Language Notes

Do - use
Do (research – a puzzle – homework)
Use (your brain – a computer – muscles)

Stop يتوقف عن stop to يتوقف لعمل شئ
He stopped smoking last week.
While going home , I stopped to buy some fruit.

Listening

SB 42

What is Salma's problem?
Mother:I am Salma's mother, you asked to see me! What is the matter?
Teacher:Thank you for coming to see me. Salma is doing well at school, but she doesn't always get good marks in her homework. I want to talk to you both about this.
Mother: Have you got any problems Salma?

Salma:I am afraid that I have a problem using the internet for my homework. I find it difficult to look for the information that I need.
Mother:What do you mean Salma?
Salma:When I go on the internet, I often see interesting games that I want to play online. So, I don't always do my homework.
Mother:You know you should do your homework first before you play any computer games.
Salma:The trouble is that I really enjoy computer games. It is quite hard to think about work when I know that I can get better at a computer game if I spend more time playing it.
Teacher:Let me see if I can help. Where do you keep your computer at home?
Mother:It is a laptop so Salma usually takes it to her bedroom. It is quiet there.
Teacher:Ask Salma to only use the internet in a room where you can see her. In that way you know that she is working not playing computer games.
Mother:Should I stop her playing all computer games?
Teacher:Children need to relax and some computer games can teach you things. So, it is not bad to play computer games after she has finished her homework. But she must do her homework first and remember it is much better to play a sport such as tennis or volley ball. Sports are good for the brain as well as the body
Salma:I like tennis. Let me see if I can play at the sports club next week.
Teacher: That sounds like a good idea, Salma.

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Exercises that you do with your body are called……

a. mental **b. chemical** **c. physical** **d. historical**

2.A…… is a game that you have to think about carefully to find clues.

a. puzzle **b. problem** **c. trouble** **d. research**

3.Did you have any…… finding your way to the new school ?

a. puzzle **b. trouble** **c. double** **d. accidents**

4. When you are sorry for doing something wrong, you can say I'm……

a. busy **b. afraid** **c. right** **d. lazy**

5. My family are going to fly to England, but I'm…… of flying.

a. angry **b. happy** **c. busy** **d. frightened**

6. How can using computer late at night…… your sleep ?

a. effect **b. reflect** **c. affect** **d. perfect**

7. Soha spends much time…… puzzles.

a. making **b. doing** **c. taking** **d. giving**

8. fell Ask your teacher or your parents…… advice.

a. in **b. to** **c. for** **d. on**

Language functions

Talking about problems التحدث عن المشكلات

I'm afraid that I ...
I'm afraid that I have a problem using the internet.
I find it difficult to + inf. المصدر
I find it difficult to look for the information that I need.
The trouble is that.....
The trouble is that I spend too much time playing computer games.

Asking about and offering help طلب و عرض المساعدة

- Have you got any problems ?
- What's the matter ?
- Let me see if I can help.

Classwork

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Someone tells you that he has a problem of spending too muchti playing computer games.
2. Your teacher is ill and you want the teacher to know that the class is thinking about him.
3. A friend asks you why you look worried. It's because you have a problem using the printer.
4. Your friend finds it difficult to stop listening to music.
5. Your friend is looking under his car. You want to know if he needs

HOMEWORK

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Hany has a problem with his mobile

Ahmed :Are you angry?
Hany : Yes, I'm angry.
Ahmed : ..(1) .....?
Hany : Yes, I'm afraid that I can't use my mobile phone because it doesn't work well.
Ahmed : ..(2) .....?
Hany : Yes, it is new.
Ahmed : Can I help you?
Hany : ..(3) .....
Ahmed : It's OK now. Take it and try.
Hany : ..(4) .....?

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You are asked why you look worried. It's because you have an exam tomorrow.
2. You offer to help your brother with his homework.
3. You meet a person whose car is broken down. Ask about the problem.
4 - Your mother has a problem with her sewing machine. Ask her about the problem.

5- Your friend asks you, "What's the matter"?

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

Being very intelligent can help people to do amazing things. But what makes people intelligent? Albert Einstein was a great scientist, but he had problems with reading. Experts now think that people can be intelligent in many different ways. For example, you might be intelligent because you are good at languages, maths or music. Some people are intelligent because they are good at controlling their bodies. Athletes have this kind of intelligence and they can control their muscles, breathing and balance very well. Other people understand people's feelings, while others might be intelligent because they understand animals and nature. Also, sailors have an intelligence that makes them good at finding their way across seas or up and down rivers.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. How are sailors intelligent ?
2. How many kinds of intelligence are there in the passage ?
3. What was Albert's problem ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Athletes are good at controlling their ……

a. feelings **b. brains** **c. bodies** **d. speaking**

5. Some people can be intelligent by understanding people's……

a. cooking **b. feelings** **c. reading** **d. running**

4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 . …… the internet too much wastes your time.

a. Using **b.Use** **c.Used** **d.Uses**

2. Drivers can't…… their cars during heavy rain.

a. score **b. control** **c.hit** **d.ride**

3. Strong…… are needed in most sports like boxing or swimming.

a. feelings **b. memories** **c. muscles** **d. subjects**

4. It's good to do your…… early.

a. brain **b. homework** **c. muscles** **d. computer**

5…… tall means that you can play basketball easily.

a. Be **b. Being** **c.Am** **d.Will be**

6. She doesn't like…… at all.

a. run **b. to run** **c.runs** **d. running**

7- Tamer likes boats and ships, so he wants to be a ……

a. doctor **b sailor** **c. farmer** **d. teacher**

8- She nearly lost her …… as the bus suddenly moved forward.

a intelligence **b. information** **c. balance** **d. nature**

9- It is important for old people to continue to …… their brains every day.

a. do **b. use** **c. make** **d. win**

10- …… too much television isn't good for you.

a Watch **b. Watches** **c Watching** **d. Watched**

11- Reham likes …… new languages

a. learning **b. learn** **c. learnt** **d. learns**

12- …… lazy makes your teacher angry with you.

a.To being **b Be** **c. Being** **d. Is**

5-Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Reading stories is my favourite hobby, (like)
2. It's not healthy to watch too much TV. (Watching)
3. Travelling by train is comfortable, (It's.....)
4- It is bad for you to sleep late at night. (Sleeping)
5- It's fun to read. (Reading)
6- It is easy for sailors to find their way across seas. (Finding)
7- It's unsafe to walk in dark places alone. (Walking)
8- My friend can play tennis well. (good)
9- It's very useful to learn new languages every year. (Learning)

6-Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

• kinds of intelligence • how can using computers late at night affect your sleep

Write an email on one of the following:

1- To your cousin on your problem with the internet. 2- To your cousin on computer games.
Your name is Hany.

The senses

LESSONS 1 . 2

professor	استاذ جامعى	tour guide	مرشد سياحى	even	حتى
subject	مادة دراسية	muscles	عضلات	way	طريقة
adult	بالغ	sand	رمال	squash	اسكواش
printer	طابعة	language	لغة	accident	حادث
soldier	جندى	finger	اصبع	triangle	مثلث
equipment	معدات	protect	يحمى	improve	يحسن
system	نظام	text	نص	work out	يستنتج
shape	شكل	technology	تكنولوجيا	blind	كفيف
sense	حاسة	crowded	مزدحم	meaning	معنى
cotton clothes		ملابس قطنية		paper	ورق
braille dictionary		قاموس برايل		square	مربع- ميدان
Wembley Stadium		ستاد ويمبلى		circle	دائرة

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
show	يعرض	showed	shown
read	يقرأ	read	read
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
become	يصبح	became	become

كلمات متشابهة

tour	جولة	tower	برج
library	مكتبة	bookshop	محل كتب
paper	ورق	a paper	جريدة
blind	كفيف	blend	يخلط

Word	كلمة	Opposite	عكسها

Heavy	ثقيل	light	خفيف
near	قريب	far	بعيد

Definitions

system	نظام	a way of doing some thing
adult	بالغ	you are this when you are 18 or older
work out	يستنتج	to calculate something
equipment	معدات	things that are needed of particular activity or purpose
soldier	جندى	a person who works to protect a country
sign	علامة	words or pictures that give information
shape	شكل	a square, circle and triangle are examples of this
blind	كفيف	not able to see

PREPOSITION

look up	يبحث عن كلمة فى قاموس	instead of	بدلا من
make up	يؤلف	on a trip	فى رحلة
change into	يغير الى	decide to	يقرر ان

Expression تعبيرات هامة

change text into Braille	يحول النص الى برايل	all day	طوال النهار
took his name	سميت باسمه (be) called	يدعى - يسمى	
make it easier for	يجعل من السهل على	live next door	يعيش بالجوار

Language Notes

trip رحلة قصيرة • **journey** رحلة طويلة **tour** جولة
He went on a business trip to Japan.
The journey to Aswan takes 18 hours.
We were given a tour of the city.
blind كفيف **deaf** اصم **dumb** ابكم
He became blind when he was three.
He is deaf. He cant hear you.
She was born deaf and dumb.
beach (بلاج) شاطئ **shore** شاطئ فاصل بين الماء و اليابس **bank** ضفة نهر
The children were playing on the beach.
My uncle has a house on the shore.
Can you swim to the opposite bank of the Nile?
• **news** اخبار • **equipment** معدات - **information** معلومات • **paper** ورق هذه الكلمات لا تعد (تعامل معاملة المفرد)

The news was bad yesterday.The equipment he bought is useful.
The information on the internet is useful. Paper is used for writing.

Reading

SB 45

Louis Braille

Louis Braille, who was born in 1809, became blind after an accident when he was three. At first,Louis went to school in his village, where his father made equipment for horses. When he was ten,he went to a school for blind children in Paris. In the school library, there were 14 books which hada system of dots instead of letters. When students touched the letters, they could work out themeaning of the words. Louis wanted to find a way to improve the system.Then in 1821, a man called Charles Barbier visited the school. Barbier, who was a soldier, showedthe students his own system of dots on paper. It was used by soldiers to read and write messages at night. Louis decided to improve Barbier's system to make it easier for blind people to use.When he was 15, he wrote his first book of signs. He continued adding more signs to his system. He also made up signs for maths and music. The signs took his name: Braille.These days, new technology has made Braille even easier to use. Some computers, which canquickly change text into Braille, now have Braille printers. Electronic books (ebooks) can also beread in Braille.You can find Braille in many different languages, all over the world. There are even Braille dictionaries so that blind adults and children can look up words and find out their meanings.

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- When a blind student touches the letters, he can ..... themeaning of the words.

a. look up **b. work out** **c. invent** **d. improve**

2- Louis Braille ..... Barbier's system of dots to make it easier.

a. showed **b. kept** **c. improved** **d. enjoyed**

3- Every person has five.....

a. shapes **b. senses** **c. signs** **d. dots**

4- Books of blind people use dots instead ..... letters.

a. on **b. with** **c. of** **d. in**

5- Louis Braille made up ..... for maths and music.

a. senses **b. signs** **c. dots** **d. subjects**

6- Squares, circles and triangles are examples of .....

a. ships **b. shops** **c. shapes** **d sheep**

7- If you don't know a word, look it..... in the dictionary.

o out **b. of** **c. at** **d. up**

8- The signs that Braille added to the system ..... his name.

a. stayed **b. took** **c. visited** **d. played**

9- When you are 18 years or older, you are .....

a. a child **b. an adult** **c. mad** **d. ill**

Grammar

Relative clauses العبارات الموصولة

Who – which – that – whose – where – when

هناك نوعان من جمل الوصل

1- عبارات الوصل المحددة التى تستخدم لتحديد الاسم و تعطى معلومات محددة عن الاسم التى نقصده و لا يستخدم فواصل قبلها او بعدها و لا يمكن حذفها

This is the man. **He** lives next to our house.
This is the man **who/that** lives next to our house.

1- عبارات الوصل الغير المحددة لا تحدد الاسم و تعطى معلومات اضافية عن الاسم التى نقصده و يستخدم فواصل قبلها او بعدها اذا كانت فى وسط الجملة و يمكن حذفها

Mr Muhammed , who livws next door , is very clever.
Mr Muhammed is very clever.

1- Who = that	الذى / التى / الذين / الاتى (تحل محل الفاعل او المفعول العاقل)

- This is the man. **He** lives next to our house.
- This is the man **who/that** lives next to our house.
- Ahmed is a good friend. **He works in a factory**.
- Ahmed **who/that works in a factory** is a good friend.
- This is the man. I want to talk to **him**.
- This is the man **who (whom)(that)** I want to talk to.
- This is the man I want to talk to. **يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل عندما يحل محل المفعول**

2- Which = that	الذى / التى / الذين / الاتى (تحل محل الفاعل او المفعول غير العاقل)

- This is the lorry. **It** hit the bus
- This is the lorry **which (that)** hit the lorry
- Give me the book. You borrowed **it** from me last week.
- Give me the book **which / that** you borrowed from me last week.
- This is the film. I watched **it** yesterday.
- This is the film **which (that)** I watched yesterday.
- This is the film I watched yesterday. **يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل عندما يحل محل المفعول**

3- whose	للملكية

تحل محل 's , their , her , his ويتبعا اسم الشئ المملوك

- I helped the woman. **The woman's** car had broken down.
- I helped the woman **whose** car had broken down.
- We felt sorry for the boy. **His** father had died in an accident.
- We felt sorry for the boy **whose** father had died in an accident.
- These are our neighbours. **Their** son is a doctor.
- These are our neighbours **whose** son is a doctor.

4- Where	حيث - المكان الذى فيه (تدل على المكان)

- I went to Giza. I saw the pyramids **there**.
- I went to Giza **where** I saw the pyramids.

5- When	هو الوقت الذى –عندما ☐

- Ramadan is a special month. We fast in **Ramadan**.
- Ramadan is a special month **when** we fast.
- September is the month. School starts **in September**.
- September is the month **when** school starts.

Rewrite تدريب

1- Ali 's father is a scientist. **He** works in the university, (who)
= Alaa's father, who works in the university, is a scientist.
2- The post office is opposite the station. My sister works **there**. (where)
= The post office, where my sister works, is opposite the station.
3- My friend is called Hany. **His** father is a mechanic, (whose)
= My friend, whose father is a mechanic, is called Hany.
4-Nadia went to live in Sanania. I used to go to school with **her**. (who)
= Nadia, who I used to go to school with, went to live in Sanania.
5-A beautiful girl has won the first prize. (who)
= A girl , who is beautiful, won the first prize.
6- I thanked my friend. He gave me a present. (who)
= I thanked my friend, who gave me a present.
7-This is the house. We live in it. (where)
= This is the house, where we live.
8-That man rescued my brother, (who)
=That is the man who rescued my brother.

Classwork

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- We went to the supermarket, …… we bought some food for a picnic.
a which **b. who** **c. where** **d. that**
2- My uncle…… lives in Cairo, is visiting us tonight.
a. whose **b. who** **c. when** **d. that**
3- sb Louis went to school in his village…… his father made equipment for horses.
a who **b. that** **c. whose** **d. where**
4- The man, …… car was stolen, went to the police station.
a. when **b. whose** **c. where** **d. who**
5- September, …… we go back to school, is the ninth month of the year.
a. when **b. where** **c. which** **d. that**
6- Cairo…… is the capital of Egypt, is the biggest city in Africa.
a. who **b. which** **c. where** **d. whose**
7.Thebank, …… is near our house, is always busy.
a. whose **b. who** **c. which** **d. where**

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Sanania is a very beautiful place. We went there on our school trip last year. (where)
2-English is a very important subject. All students study it at school, (which)
3- Mr Muhammed El- Shaarawy is a kind man. He teaches us English. (who)
4- I like autumn. Leaves fall in autumn, (when)

HOMEWORK

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Nahid is talking to Marwa about Mahomed Ali Rashwan, the judo player.

Nahid : Do you like sport ?
Marwa : (1).....
Nahid : (2)..... ?
Marwa : Judo is my favourite sport.
Nahid : Who is your favourite Judo player ?
Marwa : (3).....
Nahid : (4)..... ?
Marwa : Yes, he was so famous and he won many medals.

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father..... is a teacher, sometimes helps me with my homework.
a. who **b. whose** **c. which** **d.when**
2. Luxor..... thousands of tourists stay every year, is near the Nile.
a. whose **b.when** **c. where** **d.who**
3. Ahmed, ... muscles are very strong, carried the heavy bag.
a. which **b.who** **c. whose** **d.when**
4. English..... all students study at school, is a very important subject.
a. who **b. whose** **c. which** **d.when**
5. My brother was born in 1973..... our great army won the war.
a. who **b.when** **c. whose** **d. where**
6. ..... book is this ? It's Bassim's.
a. Who **b. Which** **c. Whose** **d.When**
7. Who is that man ..... hair is red ?
a. who's **b. whose** **c.who** **d. which**
8. The..... is the way of doing something.
a. invitation **b. system** **c. apology** **d. information**
9. Maths..... pupils study at school, is an interesting subject.
a. who **b. when** **c. which** **d. whose**
10.The words or pictures that give information are called.....
a. signals **b. signs** **c. singers** **d. songs**
11.The club..... is near my house, is always crowded.
a. which **b. where** **c. who** **d. when**
12. These rackets and skates are my own sports.....
a. games **b. clubs** **c. athletes** **d. equipment**
13 - My uncle, ... lives on a farm, has three horses.
a. who **b. which** **c. when** **d. that**
14- The school, ... my sister goes to , has a nice playground.
a. when **b. where** **c. who** **d. which**
15- Louis Braille, ... system is used everywhere, became blind when he was three.
a. who **b. when** **c. whose** **d. which**
16- I visited London in 2010, ------- my father was working there.
a. who **b. which** **c. when** **d. where**
17-A/An ..... person isn't able to see.
a. deaf **b. blind** **c. dumb** **d. adult**

18- A …… is a person who works to protect the country.

a. doctor **b. teacher** **c. student** **d. soldier**

19 The writer…… works are amazing, got the Nobel Prize.

a. who **b. whose** **c. what** **d. which**

20. This is the bank…… was robbed yesterday.

a. where **b.which** **c. who** **d. whose**

3-Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The story is very good. It was written by an Egyptian writer, (which)
2. Ahmed's cousin is a doctor. He lives in Assiut. (who)
3. The bank is near the school. Mrs Mona works there, (where)
4. Squash keeps me fit, it is my favourite sport. (which)
5. Many tourists in London visit Wembley Stadium. You can see many sports there. (where)
6. Mona received a medal for winning the race. She is an excellent runner, (who)
7. The Deaf School was set up in Cairo. It is for all children from all over Egypt, (which)
8. I always visit my grandparents. They live in the village, (who)
9. Abu Gorab is a very interesting place. We went there on our school trip last year. (where)
10. I repaired the old watch, (which)
11. July is the month. We go to Alex in it. (when)
12. The tour guide gave us a tour of the city. He knew everything about Egypt, (who)
13. Omar is my friend. His brother studies engineering, (whose)
14. The hospital is crowded today. It is next to the bank. (which)
15. My bag was lost on that bus. (where)

4-Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- Louis Braille 2- an interesting place 3- What would you feel and do if you're blind

The senses

LESSONS 3 . 4 . 5

excellent	ممتاز	during	اثناء	really	حقا
accept	يقبل	receive	يتسلم	special	خاص
well	جيدا – بئر	both	كلا من	karate lesson	درس كاراتيه
spectator	متفرج	match	مباراة	sports club	نادي رياضي
moreover	علاوة علي ذلك	take up	يتعلم	charity	جمعية خيرية
invite	يدعو	sign language	لغة الاشارة	believe	يعتقد – يؤمن
deaf	اصم	achievement	انجاز	communicate	يتصل
include	يشمل	hand out	يسلم- يوزع	encourage	يشجع
set up	ينشئ	activity	نشاط	learners	متعلمون
Nuweiba	نويبع	plan	خطة	noon	الظهيرة
slightly	بشكل بسيط	orchestra	اوركسترا	concert	حفلة موسيقية
Bibliotheca Alexandrina		مكتبة الاسكندرية		weekend	نهاية الاسبوع
weekly	اسبوعيا	wedding	حفل زفاف	mouth	فم
general education		التعليم العام		refuse	يرفض
computer studies		الحاسب الالي		later	فيما بعد

Conjugations of irregular verbs

Present	المعنى	Past	P.P
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
win	يفوز	won	won
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
take	ياخذ	took	taken

كلمات متشابهة

set	يعد	sit	يجلس
accept	يقبل	except	☐فيما عدا
well	حسنا	will	☐سوف
plan	خطة	plane	طائرة

Word	☐كلمة	Opposite	☐عكسها
tired	متعب	relaxed	مسترخ
few	قليل	many	كثير

Definitions

sign language	لغة الاشارة	a language that is communicated by the hands
slightly deaf	يسمع بدرجة قليلة	someone who can't hear well
hand out	يوزع	give
take up	يتعلم	Learn
set up	يبدأ	start
look up	يجد	find

PREPOSITION

communicate with	يتصل ب	in two weeks' time	فى خلال اسبوعين
at weekends	فى عطلة نهاية الاسبوع	important for	مهم ل
set off	يبدا رحلة	go bock	يعود

Expression تعبيرات هامة

everyday life	الحياة اليومية	It sounds great	يبدو رائعا
I 'd Love to.	اريد ذلك	are included in ...	متضمنين فى

Language Notes

• **communicate** يتصل	• **connect** يوصل
It is important for deaf people to communicate with people who can hear.	
The computer is connected to the printer.	
Phrasal verbs	
look after يعتنى ب **look for** يبحث عن - **look up** يبحث عن كلمة فى قاموس	
hand يناول **hand out** يوزع . **set** يحدد **set up** ينشئ	
go يذهب **go back** يعود **work** يعمل **work out** يستنتج	

Listening

SB 47

Hassan : Hi! Tarik.
Tarik : Hello! Hassan. How are you?
Hassan : I'm fine, thanks.
Tarik : What are you doing later this afternoon? Would you Like to go to the sports club to play football?
Hassan : I am sorry I'd love to but I can't because I am I going shopping with my sister Manal. She knows someone who plays in an orchestra. They're coming here to play in a concert soon so we're going to hand out information to people about the concert so I'm afraid I can't play football today.
Tarik : Ah, tell me more about the orchestra,
Hassan : The orchestra which is called Al Nour wol Amal orchestra was set up in the 1950s for blind girls and women. They all read music in Braille.
Tarik : That's a great achievement.
Hassan : Yes, it is.
Tarik : They travel all over the world and the next concert is here in two weeks' time. I'd like to invite you to it. Can you come?
Hassan : I'd love to! It sounds great.

Reading

SB 48

The Deaf School in Cairo

- The Deaf School in Cairo was set up in 1982 for children from all over Egypt. There ore about 70 children at the school, where most of them live during the week. They go home at weekends and during the holidays.
- At the school, students learn Egyptian Sign Language.They also learn reading and writing in Arabic and English, maths, science, PE. and computer studies.
- The teachers at the Deaf School believe that it is really important for deaf people to be able to communicate with people who can hear. They encourage the family and friends of deaf students to take up sign language themselves at special weekly classes for people who can hear.They also plan activities where both deaf people and people who can hear can learn about each other's lives,
- More schools are now open for deaf learners all over Egypt. Moreover, slightly deaf students are now included in general education schools so that they can be with other students that hear well.

Reading

WB 35

Hi Leila,
How are you ? I haven't seen you for a long time. I'd like to invite you to stay with my family during the holidays. There are many activities that you will enjoy. We can visit the Bibliotheca Alexandrina. It isn't only a library: there are four museums inside as well. It is very interesting. Would you like to go to a concert, too ? There is a famous orchestra playing in a few weeks.
Here's my address:
28 Khaled ibn Al Waleed St,
Miami
I hope you can come!
All the best,
Magda

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A …… person is the one who can't hear.
a. blind **b.dumb** **c.lazy** **d.deaf**
2. …… language is the way used by deaf people to communicate using hands.
a. Sign **b.Body** **c.Eye** **d. Mouth**
3. …… is a group of musicians who use different musical instruments.
a. Army **b.Team** **c. Orchestra** **d. chorus**
4. When someone invites you, you can accept or refuse his ……
a- intention **b. invention** **c. invitation** **d. apology**
5. Amr Diab gave a fantastic …… yesterday.
a. concert **b. wedding** **c. picnic** **d. journey**
6. We should help deaf students to…… up sign language.
a. make **b.go** **c.set** **d.take**
7- The orchestra is having a …… next Friday.
a. match **b. game** **c. music** **d. concert**
8- It is important for deaf people to …… with people who can hear.
a. connect **b. invite** **c. include** **d. communicate**

Language functions

Invitation الدعوة

I'd like to invite you to …….. **(I'd like to invite you to my sister's wedding)**
Would you like to come to …… **(would you like to come to a football match?)**
What about …….. **(What about having tea?)**

Accepting invitations قبول الدعوات

I'd love to come. * I'd love to. * I'd be pleased to come. That sounds great.

Refusing İnvitation رفض الدعوة

*** I'm sorry. I can't come. * I wish I could but ……..**
***I'm afraid I can't. I have to …… * I'd love to but ……..**

Classwork

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your uncle has invited you to have dinner. Refuse politely.
2. You invite your friend Ali to your sister's wedding.
3. You want to invite your mother to a concert for Mother's Day.
4. Your cousin invites you to his wedding. You accept his invitation.
5. Your friend invited you to the concert. Give a reason if you refuse.

HOMEWORK

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Omar invites Moaz to go with him to the park.

Omar : Would you like to come with us to the park on Friday, Moaz?
Moaz : I'd like to, but I ..(1) ……
Omar : ..(2) …… ?
Moaz : This English test is on Sunday.
Omar : OK, ..(3) ……?
Moaz : Yes, I studied well.
Omar : ..(4) ……
Moaz : Thank you, Moaz.

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You are invited to your friend's birthday party. You like the idea.
2. You invite your aunt to spend a week with you.
3. You are invited to a trip with your friends in Luxor, but you have a meeting.
4 - Your friend invites you to his sister's birthday party. But you are busy.
5- Your cousin invites you to his wedding. You accept his invitation.
5- You want to invite your friend to your house.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The five senses of the body include sight, hearing, taste, smell, and touch. Human beings and most other animals use the five senses to help them live and know the world around **them**. The senses also help people to learn, protect themselves, and to enjoy the differences between foods, sounds, and other experiences a person has in life. The senses also work together to give you a clear picture of the activities around you. If one sense is not working due to an accident or illness, then other senses will take over or become stronger to make up for the missing sense. Can you imagine what it might be like to live your life without any of your senses?

A- Answer the following questions:

1-What are the five senses?

2- What happens when one sense isn't working?

3- Do you think a person who loses one of the senses lives a normal life?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Human beings and most animals have …….. senses.

a. five **b. fifty** **c.four** **d. fifty**

5- The underlined word "them" refers to ……..

a. the senses **b. foods** **c.human beings and most animals** **d. sounds**

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My neighbor …….. is friendly, is a primary school teacher.

a. where **b.what** **c.when** **d.who**

2. Camels…….. can live for 50 years, can live for weeks without water.

a. which **b.when** **c. where** **d. whose**

3. We went to the supermarket…….. we bought some food for a picnic.

a. which **b. where** **c.when** **d.who**

4. The teacher…….. out information about the concert.

a. took **b. handed** **c.made** **d.put**

5. You become…….. when you are eighteen years old.

a. an adult **b. a soldier** **c. honest** **d. an opponent**

6. The tourist didn't speak Arabic, but we…….. in English.

a. handed out **b. set up** **c. communicated** **d. made up**

7.the Pyramids, …….. many tourists visit every year, are very interesting.

a. who **b. when** **c. whose** **d. which**

8. My brother, …….. muscles are strong, carried the heavy bag.

a. whose **b. who** **c. when** **d. where**

9. I have just come from Aswan, …….. my grandparents live.

a. when **b. who** **c. where** **d. which**

10. The Deaf School was set …….. in 1982.

a. on **b. up** **c. off** **d. out**

11. Al Nour Wal Amal orchestra read music …….. Braille.

a. in **b. with** **c. by** **d. at**

12. My friends invited me to a …….. last Friday. The orchestra played very well.

a. match **b. play** **c. concert** **d. meeting**

5-Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The bakery is in that street. My sister lives there, (where)
2. Ahmed plays basketball well. He is very tall. (who)
3. Gold rings are very expensive, (which)

4- Luxor is near the Nile. Thousands of tourists stay there every year. (where)
5. Our school is more than 100 years old, it has about 1,000 students, (which)
6- My best friend lives next to me. He is called Hany. (who)

7- Write an email of seven (7) sentences about one of the following :

- an email to your cousin inviting him to your birthday party
- an email to your friend refusing his invitation politely as you have an exam and you can't attend his wedding party

Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences on one of the following

1- An invitation to your pen friend to visit Egypt. 2- How we can help blind people.

Revision C

Reading

SB 50

An amazing exhibition

One day last week, our teacher handed out some information about an exhibition in London, where I live. He said that we should go if we were interested in history. The exhibition had historic jewellery and statues which are from the time of Tutankhamun. My friend Alex, who know that I love history, said, "Revising history will be easier if we go." So we both decided to go at the weekend. It took me less time to get to the exhibition than Alex, but he wasn't very late.

The exhibition was set up in a huge, famous building where people could see the amazing jewels, art and statues from different museums in Egypt. Before it arrived in London, the exhibition travelled to four other cities,where thousands of people came to see it. Understanding Egypt's history is something we all want to do! I looked up all the information that I could find about Tutankhamun before I went. I was very excited to see everything. I also found out about Howard Carter, who worked out how to find Tutankhamun in Egypt. It was very difficult for him, but he refused to stop trying and he finally discovered Tutankhamun in 1922. "Our teacher was right," Alex said when we got home. "That exhibition taught us a lot about history."This was true: it was a good recommendation.

Listening

Speaker 1 : What's the matter? You look tired.
Speaker 2 : I've homework all afternoon. However,I find it difficult to work out these problems.
Speaker 1 : Would you like me to help?
Speaker 2 : That sounds great. We have a test in a few days.
Speaker 2 : The trouble is that I can't memorise so many rules.
Speaker 1 : I've always been interested in maths. So, let me see if I can help. Now, what's the answer to this one?
Speaker 2 :I think I can solve that. Is it 25?
I Speaker1 : Well done!

Practice Test 3 a

I. Finish the following dialogue:

Fatma is at school with her friend Lamia.

Fatma : You look worried.
Lamia : Yes, I am very worried.

Fatma : (1).....?
Lamia : I'm afraid that I can't find my book.
Fatma : (2).....Is this it?
Lamia : Yes, it is. Thank you! We're discussing the book in my book club. (3) ..... ?
Fatma :Yes, I would love to come. Thank you for inviting me.
Lamia : (4).....
Fatma : Ok. I'll be there at 5.

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Although you lost the game, you congratulate your opponent.
2. You want to invite your friend to your house this Saturday.
3. You see a person looking under their car. You want to know if they need help.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many experts think that people first played rugby in 1823. At this time, students at Rugby School in England were playing football. Then, a boy called William Webb-Ellis took the ball in his hands and ran towards the opponents. This made a new game. To score in rugby, teams have to run with or kick the ball to one end of the field. The ball is oval, like an egg. You have to be fast and strong to be good at playing rugby. Many players, who can weigh about 100 kilograms, are very big! Today, rugby is very popular in many countries. About 100 countries play the sport. However, it is not as popular as football. More than 200 countries play **that** sport.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What 's the main idea of the passage ?
2. What sort of person do you need to be in order to play rugby well ?
3. Why do you think that William Webb-Ellis decided to take the ball with his hands ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. An oval is .....

a. a shape **b. a kind of football** **c. a kind of plastic** **d. a kind of egg**

5. Rugby got its name from .....

a. a player **b. a country** **c. a school** **d. an egg**

C. The Reader

4-a. Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. Joe Green	a. was angry with Joe for taking care of Black Beauty.
2. John Manly	b. reported the rude driver to the police.
3. The factory driver	c. had to move to a warmer climate.
4. Mrs Gordon	d. took a note to Dr White.
	e. hit the horses with a whip.

b. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did John ride Black Beauty to another village during the night ?
2. What happened to Black Beauty after he returned with the doctor ?
3. Do you think that John was right to have a helper who is only fourteen ?
4. Why do you think that the driver of the carriage near the factory was rude to Joe ?
5. Why did the doctor ride Black Beauty instead of his own horse ?

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 . ..... blind means that you cannot see.

a. Be **b. Will be** **c. Being** **d. Am**

2. My neighbour…… is a teacher, sometimes helps me with my English.

a. whose **b. who** **c. which** **d. where**

3. What did you…… do before you came to school this morning ?

a. must **b. have** **c, have to** **d. had to**

4. Who is your…… in the tennis competition ?

a. opponent **b. spectator** **c. inventor** **d. opposite**

5. Hassan's father said that the car was difficult to…… because it was raining.

a. balance **b. score** **c. control** **d. hit**

6. The teacher asked me to…… the books to the class.

a. hand out **b, hand up** **c. look up** **d. look out**

6. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1.Tarek is very good at tennis. He's good at basketball, too. (Furthermore)

2. It is not necessary to get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday, (have to)

3. Do you have a problem ? (matter)

7. Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

-a sport you like - what a player should do to be a good sport

Practice Test 3 b

I. Finish the following dialogue:

Fawzi is talking about sport with his friend Munir.

Fawzi : How do you become good at basketball, Munir ?

Munir : You have to be tall and fast. (1)…… ?

Fawzi : I'm not tall or fast. (2)……

Munir : I'm sure that you are good at some sports. What about chess ? I'm playing a game of chess this evening. Would you like to play ?

Fawzi : (3)……

Munir : OK, we can play another evening when you're not visiting your grandparents. (4)…… ?

Fawzi : Tomorrow evening is perfect. See you then!

2. Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. A friend asks you to go to the beach this Saturday. You would like to go.
2. A friend asks you why you look worried. It's because you have a problem using the printer.
3. You want a friend to go with you to the museum this Thursday.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are about 285 million people in the world who are blind or find it difficult to see. However, not many of these people can read Braille. The problem is that Braille books are not cheap. The cost of making a Braille book is four or five times more than any other book. Technology can help blind people. Some of them can listen to news and information on smartphones. There are also "talking books" which blind people can listen to. However, some blind people prefer to read. Now, you can also buy Braille ebooks. At the moment, these are difficult to make and expensive to buy.
However, scientists are now working on Braille ebooks that might be cheaper than Braille books in the future. These ebooks might be the best way to help blind people. **That** would be good news for millions of people.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. How many people have problems with seeing ?
2. Why do you think that Braille books are not cheap to make ?

3. What does the underlined word "That" refer to?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The cost of something is how ……

a. much money you need to buy it **b. long it takes to make**

c. many people use it **d. you make something**

5. If they become cheaper, more blind people will probably use ……in the future.

a. Braille books **b. Braille ebooks** **c. smartphones** **d. books**

C. The Reader

4. a. Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. Joe Green	a. were Black Beauty's new owners.
2. John Manly	b. stayed with Black Beauty until he became better.
3. Squire Gordon and Mrs Gordon	c. hit the horses near the factory
4. Earl and lady Smythe	d. stopped singing after Black Beauty became ill.
	e. had to leave England.

b. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Joe Green have to brush Merrylegs but not the other horses ?
2. Why was Black Beauty not able to rest when John rode him to get a doctor in the night ?
3. Was John right to be angry with Joe Green after Black Beauty became ill ? Why ? /Why not ?
4. What happened to the man who hit the horses near the factory ?
5. Why do you think John said that Joe Green "looked taller" ?

5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The museum, …… is near our school, is always busy in the afternoon.

a. whose **b. who** **c. which** **d. where**

2…… television for a long time is not good for you.

a. Watch **b. To watch** **c. Watches** **d. Watching**

3. He…… wash his hands before he eats.

a. mustn't **b. must** **c. have to** **d. hasn't**

4. You become…… when you are eighteen years old.

a. an adult **b. a soldier** **c. an opponent** **d. honest**

5. The tourist did not speak Arabic, but we…… in English.

a. handed out **b. set up** **c. communicated** **d, made up**

6. You need strong…… to be good at most sports.

a. physical **b. muscles** **c. feelings** **d. memory**

6. Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It's sunny today, but it's not very hot. (However)
2. I went to visit my cousin last week. She lives in Luxor, (who)
3. It isn't healthy to lie in bed for a long time. (lying)

7- Write an email of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- inviting your friend to your birthday party.
- telling your friend what you have to and don't have to do every day at school.

Black Beauty

By Anna Sewell

The author المؤلف

a) Anna Sewell (1820-1878)

Anna Sewell was born in England in 1820. when she was a child, she had an accident which badly damaged her legs. After this she could not walk, but she learned to drive a horse and carriage. She loved the horses that helped her to travel around. She also helped her mother, who wrote children's books. Anna decided that she wanted to write, too. She wanted people to understand that looking after horses was important, so she wrote a book about the life of a working horse. In 1877, she wrote Black Beauty, and it has become one of the most popular books for children.

آنا سيويل من عام (1820 – 1878)

ولدت آنا سيويل في انجلترا عام 1820. و عندما كانت طفلة، تعرضت لحادث و التي أصيبت فيها ساقيها إصابة بالغة و بعد ذلك الحادث لم تستطع المشي، لكنها تعلمت قيادة الحصان و العربة. فلقد أحببت الخيول التي ساعدتها على السفر حولها. كما ساعدت أيضاً والدتها التي كتبت كتب للأطفال. قررت آنا أنها تريد الكتابة أيضا. فلقد أرادت أن يفهم الناس أن العناية بالخيول كان شيء هام، لذلك كتبت كتابا عن حياة حصان يعمل. في عام 1877، كتبت قصة بلاك بيوتي، وأصبحت واحدة من الكتب الأكثر شعبية للأطفال.

accident	حادث	understand	يفهم
damaged	يتلف	look after	يعتني بـ
carriage	مركبة/حافلة	important	مهم
travel around	يسافر حول	a working horse	حصان عامل
popular	محبوب / مشهور	decide	يقرر

Questions and answers

1- Where and when was Anaa Sewell born? — اين و متى ولدت آنا سيول؟

- She was born in England in 1820. — بالجلترا في عام 1820

2- What happened when she was a child? — ماذا حدث عندما كانت طفلة

She had an accident — تعرضت لحادثة

3- Why couldn't she walk after the accident — طاذ لم تستطع المشي بعد الحادثة

Because her legs were badly damaged. — لان ساقيها اصيبت بشدة

4- What did Anna learn when she could not walk? — ماذا فعلت عنما لم تستطع المشي

- She learned to drive a horse and carriage. — تعلمت قيادة حصان و ركوب عربة تجرها الخيل

5- Why did Anna love horses? — طاذا احبت الخيل؟

- Because horses helped her to travel around. — ساعدوها على التنقل

6- How did Anna start to write books? كيف بدأت كتابة الكتب؟

- She helped her mother, who wrote children's books. ساعدت والدتها التي كانت تكتب كتب للاطفال

7- Why did Anna decide to write ?

- Because she wanted people to understand that l after horses was important. لانها ارادت ان يدرك الناس اهمية العناية بالخيول

8- What did Anna Sewell write? ماذا كتبت؟

- A book about the life of a working horse. عن حياة احد الخيول العاملة

9- When did Anna write "Black Beauty"? متى كتبت قصة الجمال الاسود؟

- in 1877. عام 1877

CHARACTERS

People

1. Farmer Grey : He is Black Beauty's first owner.

1. فارمر جـري : هو اطالك الأول لبلاك بيوتي.

2. Squire Gordon : The first owner who Black Beauty works for.

2. سكوير جوردون : اطالك الأول الذي يعمل بلاك بيوتي لديه.

3. Mrs Gordon : Squire Gordon's wife. She named "Black beauty".

3. السيدة جوردون : زوجة سكوير جوردون. و قامت بتسمية "بلاك بيوتي."

4. John Manly : A kind man who is Squire Gordon's helper.

4. جون مانـلي : رجل لطيف و هو مساعد لسكوير جوردون.

5. Joe Green : A boy who helps John Manly.

5. جو غريـــن : صبي يساعد جون مانلي.

6. Earl Smythe : A rich man who buys Black Beauty from Squire Gordon.

6. إيرل سميـث : الرجل الغني الذي يشتري بلاك بيوتي من سكوير جوردون.

7. Lady Smythe : Earl Smythe's wife.

7. سيدة سميـث : زوجة إيرل سميث.

8. York : Earl Smythe's helper.

8. يـــورك : مساعد إيرل سميث.

Horses

1. Duchess : Black Beauty's mother.

1. دانشـــز : أم بلاك بيوتي.

2. Black Beauty : the black horse who tells the story. "It's the narrator".

2. بلاك بيوتي : الحصان الأسود الذي يحكي لنا القصة. "إنه الراوي."

3. Merrylegs : A short, fat horse who carries the children at Squire Gordon's.

3. ميريليجس : الحصان القصير السمين الذي يحمل الأطفال في بيت سكوير جوردون.

4. Ginger : Black Beauty's friend, who has had a difficult past.

4. جينجـر : صديقة بلاك بيوتي، التي كان لديها ماضي صعب.

Places

1. Birtwick Park : The country home of Squire Gordon.

1. بيرتويك بارك : دولة سكوير جوردون.

2. Earlshall Park : The country home of Earl Smythe.

2. إيرلشال بارك: دولة إيـرل سميث.

Chapter 1

My early years

accident	حادثة	healthy	صحي	advice	نصيحة
apples	تفاح	helper	مساعد	along	بطول
bad-tempered	سيئ المزاج	important	هام	horse	حصان
behave	يتصرف	jolly	مرح	hurt	يؤذي
bite	يعض	kick	يرفس \ يركل	angry with	غاضب من
call	يسمى	kindly	بلطف	face	وجه
carriage	عربة يجرها الخيول	laugh	يضحك	farmer	فلاح
look after	يعتني بـ	machine	آله	field	حقل
coat	رقبة	need	يحتاج	remember	يتذكر
continue	يستمر	owner	مالك	respect	يحترم
cried	يصرخ	perfect	ممتاز	sell	يبيع
cruel	عنيف \ متوحش	popular	محبوب	stable	إسطبل
damage	يدمر	refuse	يرفض	thoughtful	مراعي لشعور الآخرين
decide	يقرر	travel around	يسافر حول	handsome	وسيم
different from	مختلف عن	true	حقيقي	gentle	لطيف
explain	يشرح	white foot	قدم بيضاء	ground	الأرض

The first place that I can remember is a large field with a little **wood** at the top, where I lived with my mother and some other horses. A small river ran along the bottom of the field. If I stood at the gate to the field, I could see my **owner**'s house next to a road. The owner, Farmer Grey, was a good man. He gave us healthy food and he spoke to us as kindly as he spoke to his children.

أول مكان يمكنني أن أتذكره هو حقل كبير يعلوه غابة صغيرة، حيث كنت أعيش مع أمي وبعض الخيول الأخرى. كان يوجد نهر صغير على امتداد الجزء السفلي من الحقل. إذا وقفت عند بوابة الحقل، كان بإمكاني رؤية منزل مالكي

بجوار الطريق. المالك، فارمر جراي، كان رجلا طيبا. أعطانا طعاما صحيا وكان يتحدث إلينا برأفة كما كان يتحدث إلى أولاده

There were other young horses in the field with me, but I was the youngest. I used to run with them, and have great fun. We used to have races, and when the biggest horses got too excited, they kicked and bit the horses next to them. One day, when my mother saw what was happening, she called me over to her.

كانت توجد معي خيول صغيرة أخرى في الحقل، لكنني كنت الأصغر . اعتدت أن اجري معهم، و امرح معهم جدا.
أعتدنا أن يكون لدينا سباقات، وعندما تتحمس الخيول الكبيرة حماسا بالغاً، يقوموا بركل و عض الخيول التي بجانبهم. وفي يوم من الأيام، عندما رأت والدتي ما يحدث، نادتني إليها

Questions and answers

1. Who is the narrator of the story ? — من هو راوي القصة؟
- Black Beauty. — بلاك بيوتي
2. Who was Farmer Grey ? — من هو "فارمر جراي"
- Black Beauty's first owner, — المالك الاول لبلاك بيوتي
3. Where did Farmer Grey live ? — ان كان يعيش؟
- In a house next to a road. — في منزل بجوار الطريق
4. How was the first place where Black Beauty lived? — كيف كان اول مكان عاش فيه؟
- A large field with a little wood at the top. — حقل واسع ذو غابة على القمة
5. Who did Black Beauty live with at Farmer Grey*s field ? — مع من كان يعيش؟
- With his mother and other horses. — مع والدته و خيول اخرى
6- How was Farmer Grey kind to Black Beauty and his mother ? — كيف كان فارمر جراي عطوف عليه ووالدته؟
- He gave them healthy food and spoke to them as kindly as he spoke to his children. — كان يعطيهم طاعما صحيا و يتحدث اليهم كما يتحدث الى اطفاله
7. What did Black Beauty use to do with other horses — ماذ اعتاد ان يفعل مع الخيول الاخرى
-They used to run, have fun and races. — اعتادوا ان يجروا و يمرحوا و يتسابقوا
8. What did the biggest horses do when they got too excited ? — ماذا كانت تفعل الخيول الاكبر عندما تنفعل
- They kicked and bit the horses next to them. — كانوا يركلون و يعضوا الخيول التي بجوارهم

"Listen to me. The horses in this field are all good horses, but they are not all like us. I don't think you have ever seen me bite or kick anyone. I hope that you'll grow up to be gentle and good. Never bite or kick, even when you are just playing a game."
I have never forgotten my mother's advice.

"استمع لي، الخيول التي في هذا الحقل كلهم خيول جيدة، لكنهم ليسوا جميعا مثلنا، ولا أعتقد أنك قد رأيتني من قبل أقوم بعض أو ركل أي شخص، وآمل أن تنمو لتصبح لطيف و جيد، لا تقم بالعض أو الركل، حتى و إن كنت تلعب مجرد لعبة " لم أنسى أبداً نصيحة والدتي.

I grew into a tall, strong horse with a black coat, with one white foot and a white star on my head. I soon learned how to pull a carriage. Sometimes I pulled the carriage with my mother, and she helped me to learn what to do.

كبرت و أصبحت حصاناً طويل القامة و قوي بفرو اسود ، مع قدم بيضاء ونجمة بيضاء على رأسي. سرعان ما تعلمت كيفية سحب العربة. في بعض الأحيان كنت أسحب العربة مع والدتي، فساعدتني على تعلم ما يجب القيام به.

"The harder you work, the kinder people will be to you," my mother explained one day. "I hope you find a good owner. How ever, there are many kinds of men. Some are as good as our owner, but some are bad. We never know who might buy us. Sometimes people don't understand what a horse needs. "I found out that my mother's words were very true.

أوضحت والدتي لي ذات واحدانه "كلما تعمل بجد، كلما كان الناس اكثر لطفا معك ".. "أتمنى أن تجد مالكا جيدا، على أي حال، هناك أنواع كثيرة من الرجال، بعضهم جيد مثل مالكنا، ولكن البعض سيء، ونحن لا نعرف أبدا من قد يشترينا، وأحيانا لا يفهم الناس ما يحتاجه الحصان "لقد اكتشفت أن كلمات والدتي صحيحة جدا.

When I was older, Farmer Grey decided to sell me to a new owner. His name was Squire Gordon and he lived in a big house in a place called Birtwick Park. It was a lovely place to live in, with large fields and comfortable stables.

عندما أصبحت كبيراً، قرر فارمر جراي بيعي إلى مالك جديد . وكان اسمه سكوايز جوردون وكان يعيش في منزل كبير في مكان يسمى بيرتويك بارك. كان مكان جميل للعيش فيه، بحقول واسعة وإسطبلات مريحة.

Questions and answers

9. What was Black Beauty's mother's advice to him ?
ماذ كانت نصيحة الام؟

-To be gentle and never kick or bite.
ان يكون لطيفا و لا يركل او يعض.

10. How was Black Beauty when he grew up ?
كيف كان بلاك بيوتي عندما كبر؟

- He was a tall, strong horse with a black coat. He had one white foot and a white star on his head.
كان طويل و قوي و ذو فرو اسود و لديه قدم بيضاء و نجمة على راسه

11.Who helped Black Beauty to learn to pull a carriage ?
من ساعده في تعلم كيفية جر العربة ؟

-His mother.
والدته

12. What true words did Beauty's mother say to him ?
ما الكلمات الصادقة التي قالتها والدته؟

-The harder you work, the kinder people will be to you.
كلما عملت بجد كلما كان الناس اكثر لطفا معك

13. Why did Black Beauty's mother advise him to work hard ?
لماذا نصحته امه بان يعمل بجد؟

- Because as he worked harder, the people would be kinder to him.
لانه كلما عمل بجد كلما كان الناس اكثر لطفا

14. What did Farmer Grey decide to do when Beauty was older ?
ماذا قرر جراي ان يفعل عندما اصبح بلاك بيوتي كبيرا؟

-He decided to sell him to a new owner.
قرر ان يبيعه

15. Who was the first owner who Black Beauty worked for ?
من هو االمالك الاول الذي عمل لديه بيوتي؟

-Squire Gordon.
سكوايز جوردون

16. Where did Squire Gordon live?
ان كان يعيش سكوايز جوردون

-In a big house in "Birtwick Park".
في منزل كبير في بيرتويك بارك

17. How /What was Birtwick Park
كيف كان بيرتوك بارك؟

- A lovely place with large fields and comfortable stables. مكان جميل ذو حقول واسعة و اسطبلات مريحة.

Squire Gordon had a kind helper called John Manly who looked after me, and I soon became good friends with the other horses in the stables. One was a small, fat horse called Merrylegs. He was a jolly, gentle horse who was always making people laugh because of the way he walked. He carried the young children of the family. Another was Ginger, a tall horse with a sad face. Merrylegs told me that Ginger often bit or kicked because people were not nice to her in the past.

كان سكوير جوردون لديه مساعد يدعى جون مانلي والذي كان يعتني بي، وسرعان ما أصبحت صديقا جيدا مع الخيول الأخرى في الإسطبلات. واحد من الخيول كان صغير وسمين يسمى ميريليجس. كان حصاناً مرحاً و لطيف الذي كان دائما ما يجعل الناس يضحكون بسبب طريقته في المشي. كان يحمل الأطفال الصغار من العائلة. و الآخر كان جينجر، كان حصان طويل القامة بوجه حزين. أخبرني ميريليجس أن جينجر في كثير من الأحيان يقوم بالعض أو الركل لأن الناس لم تكن لطيفة معها في الماضي.

" Squire Gordon's children used to bring me apples and nice things to eat," said Merrylegs. "But when they knew that Ginger bit people, they became frightened and now they don't come to visit us horses any more. However, if people are kind to her she'll soon learn to stop biting," he explained.

قال ميريليجس، "أطفال سكوير جوردون اعتادوا أن يحضروا لي التفاح وأشياء لطيفة للأكل". و أوضح قائلاً "لكن عندما علموا أن جينجر تقوم بعض الناس، أصبحوا خائفين، والآن لا يأتون لزيارتنا نحن الخيول بعد الآن. على أي حال، لو أن الناس يكونوا لطفاء معها فسوف تتعلم سريعاً أن تتوقف عن العض،".

Questions and answers

18. Who was John Manly? من هو جون مانلي ؟

-Squire Gordon's helper. مساعد سكواير جوردون

19.What did the horses think of Birtwick Park ? ماذا كان رأي الخيول في بيرتويك بارك؟

-They liked it as it was a nice place. لقد احبوه لانه مكان لطيف

20-How was John Manly ? كيف كان جون مانلي ؟

- He was kind and looked after Black Beauty. كان طيب و اعتنى ببلاك بيوتي.

21. Who were Black Beauty's friends in Squire Gordon's stable ? من هم اصدقاؤه في اسطبل سكواير ؟

- Merrylegs and Ginger. ميريليجز و جنجير

22. Who was Merrylegs ? من هو ميريليجز ؟

-A small, fat horse. He was jolly and gentle. حصان صغير و سمين و مرح و لطيف.

23.Why was Merrylegs making people laugh ? لماذا كان ميريليجز يضحك الناس؟

- Because of the way he walked. بسبب الطريقة التي يمشي بها

24. What did Merrylegs use to do? ماذا اعتاد ميريليجز ان يفعل

- He used to carry the young children of Squire's family. ان يحمل اطفال عائلة سكواير

25. What did children use to bring to Merrylegs ? ماذا اعتاد الاطفال احضاره؟

- Apples and nice things to eat. تفاح و اشياء جميلة لاكلها

26.Who was Ginger ? من هي جنجر

- A tall horse with a sad face. مهرة طويلة ذو وجه حزين.

27.Why did Ginger often bite or kick ? لماذا كانت جنجر تركل و تعض؟

- Because people were not nice to her in the past. لان الناس لم يكونوا لطفاء معها في الماضي

28. Why did children stop visiting horses ? لماذا توقف الاطفال عن زيارة الخيول ؟

- Because they became frightened as Ginger bit people اصبحوا خائفين لان جنجر كان تعض الناس.

29. When will Ginger learn to stop biting ? متى ستتعلم ان تتوقف عن العض؟

- When people become kind to her. عندما يصبح الناس طيبين معها.

The next day, Squire Gordon took me out around Birtwick Park.

في اليوم التالي، أخذني سكوير غوردون بالخارج حول بيرتويك بارك.

"How is your new horse?" asked his wife when we returned.

"كيف حال حصانك الجديد ؟" سألته زوجته عندما عدنا.

"He is a perfect horse!" he said. "What shall we call him?"

فقال "إنه حصان مثالي!". "ماذا نسميه؟"

"He is very handsome," his wife said. "Why don't we call him Black Beauty?"

قالت زوجته "إنه وسيم جدا"،. "لماذا لا نسميه بلاك بيوتي (الجمال الأسود)؟"

"Yes, I like that!" said Squire Gordon. And that is how I got my name.

فقال سكوير جوردون "نعم، أنا أحب ذلك!". وبهذه الطريقة حصلت على اسمي.

On some days, I worked with Ginger, pulling carriage. Although Merrylegs said that Ginger was sometimes bad-tempered, I found that she was thoughtful. She always worked hard so that I didn't have to pull the carriage any more than she did. We soon became good friends.

في بعض الأيام، عملت مع جينجر ، في سحب العربة. على الرغم من أن ميريليجس قال أن جينجر تكون في بعض الأحيان سيئة المزاج، وجدت أنها كانت طيبة القلب . كانت دائما ما تعمل بجد حيث أنني لم أضطر لسحب العربة أكثر مما فعلت. و سرعان ما أصبحنا أصدقاء جيدين.

One day, when I was working with Ginger, she told me about the people she worked with in the past. None of them was kind and some of them were often cruel. She decided that she did not like people and not want to do what they asked her to. The problem was that some people hit her hard when she refused to do what they wanted. That was when she started to kick and bite people. Then they wanted to sell her, and finally she arrived at Squire Gordon's.

ذات يوم، عندما كنت أعمل مع جينجر ، أخبرتني عن الأشخاص الذين عملت معهم في الماضي. ولم يكن أي منهم لطيف معها وكان البعض منهم في كثير من الأحيان قاسيا عليها . فقررت أنها لا تحب الناس ولا تريد أن تفعل ما يطلبوه منها . وكانت المشكلة أن بعض الناس ضربوها بشدة عندما رفضت أن تفعل ما يريدون. كان ذلك عندما بدأت في القيام بركل وعض الناس. ثم أرادوا بيعها، و في النهاية وصلت إلى سكوير غوردون.

However, as time passed, Ginger understood that John and Squire Gordon were different from her other owners. They were always kind and gentle with their horses and she was happy to do what they asked, most of the time.

ومع ذلك، مع مرور الوقت، فهمت جينجر أن جون و سكوير غوردون كانوا مختلفين عن مالكيها الآخرون. فهم دائما ما يكونوا ودودين و لطفاء مع خيولهم وكانت سعيدة للقيام بما يطلبوه منها، معظم الوقت.

Questions and answers

1.Why did Squire Gordon and his wife call the horse "Black Beauty" ? لماذا سمى سكواير وزوجته الحصان " بلاك بيوتى"

- Because he was a perfect handsome horse. لانه كان حصان رائع الجمال

2. What was Squire Gordon's opinion about Black Beauty ? ما رأى سكواير فى بلاك بيوتى؟

- He said that Black Beauty is perfect. قال عنه انه رائع

3. Who did Black Beauty work with at Squire Gordon's ? مع من كان يعمل في المزرعة؟

-With Ginger. مع جينجر

4. Why didn't Ginger like people in the past ? لماذا لم تكن جينجر تحب الناس فى الماضى؟

- Because they used to hit her and they were cruel to her. لانهم كانوا يضربوها و يعاملوها بقسوة

5. What was Beauty's opinion about Ginger ? ما هو رأى بيوتى فى جينجر؟

- She was thoughtful. مراعية لمشاعر الاخرين- طيبة القلب

6. What did Ginger decide to do when people were unkind to her ? ماذا قررت ان تفعل عندما لم يكن الناس طيبين معها

- She decided not to do what they asked her to do. قررت الا تفعل ما يطلبوه منها.

7. What did people want to do when Ginger started to kick and bite? ماذا اراد الناس ان يفعلوا بعدما بدات تضرب و تعض

-They wanted to sell her. ارادوا ان يبيعوها

8. How was Squire Gordon with his horses ? كيف كان سكواير مع خيوله؟

- He was kind and gentle with them. كان طيبا و لطيفا معهم.

9. Why did Ginger do what John and Squire Gordon asked ? لماذا كانت تفعل ما يطلبوه منها؟

- Because they were kind to her. لانهم كانوا طيبين معها

Then one day, she saw something that showed her that some people could be good. Squire Gordon was riding her when they passed a man who worked for Squire Gordon. The man was angry with his horse and hit it hard to make it go faster. Squire Gordon did not like this.

ثم في يوم من الأيام، رأت شيئا يظهر لها أن بعض الناس يمكن أن يكون جيدين. كان سكوير جوردون يركبها عندما مروا برجل و الذي كان يعمل عند سكوير جوردون. كان الرجل غاضبا من حصانه و كان يضربه بعنف كي يجعله أسرع. فلم يعجب هذا سكوير جوردون.

"I've never seen a man who was so unkind to a horse," he cried. "No horse will do what you want by hurting it! The people who work for me must understand that a horse is not a machine!"

فصرخ قائلاً "لم أر أبداً رجلا قاسي على الحصان".. "فأي حصان لن يفعل ما تريده منه بإيذائه! الناس الذين يعملون عندي يجب أن يفهموا أن الحصان ليس آلة"!

Ginger now began to respect Squire Gordon. After this, she decided she would not bite or kick people any more.

بدأت الآن جينجر في احترام سكوير جوردون. ثم بعد ذلك، قررت أنها لن تقوم بعض أو ركل الناس بعد ذلك.

"She'll be as good as Black Beauty soon," said John. "All she needed was for people to be kind to her."

و قال جون " أنها قريباً ما ستكون جيدة مثل بلاك بيوتي".. "فكل ما تحتاجه هو أن يكون الناس لطفاء معها."

One day, I was surprised when John brought Merrylegs back to the stable and said, "Don't do that again, Merrylegs, or you'll be in trouble."

و في يوم من الأيام، فوجئت عندما قام جون بإحضار ميريليجس مرة أخرى إلى الإسطبل وقال: "لا تفعل ذلك مرة أخرى، ميريليجس، و ألا ستكون في ورطة."

"What did you do?" I asked him. I was very surprised, because Merrylegs always behaved so well.

فسألته "ماذا فعلت؟". لقد فوجئت جدا، و ذالك لأن ميريليجس دائما ما يتصرف بشكل جيد.

"Oh, I didn't do much," said Merrylegs. "I wanted to give the boys a lesson, so I threw them on the ground."

فقال ميريليجس "أوه، لم أفعل الكثير".. "أردت أن أعلم الأولاد درسا، لذلك ألقيتهم على الأرض."

"What?" I said, very surprised. "But you are always so careful with the children!"

قلت و أنا مندهش للغاية "ماذا؟" .. "لكنك دائما ما تكون حذرا جدا مع الأطفال"!

"Of course I am," he said. "I would never hurt the girls or the little children. But the older boys need a lesson sometimes," he continued. "They think that a horse is like a machine, which can continue for hours without a rest. They never think that I can feel tired. So I stopped. When I did not continue, they hit me with a stick. Then I threw them off. They need to learn how a horse feels."

فقال "بالطبع أنا كذالك.". "لم أود أبداً إصابة الفتيات أو الأطفال الصغار، لكن الأولاد الأكبر سنا يحتاجون في بعض الأحيان إلى درس ". "إنهم يعتقدون أن الحصان يشبه الآلة، التي يمكن أن تستمر لساعات دون راحة، ولا يعتقدون أبدا أنني يمكن أن أشعر بالتعب، لذلك توقفت، وعندما لم أقوم بالاستمرار، ضربوني بالعصا، فطرحتهم أرضاً. يجب أن يتعلموا كيف يشعر الحصان."

"Why didn't you kick them?" said Ginger.

قالت جينجر "لماذا لم تقم بركلهم؟"

"No, I would never do that. I threw them off because I knew it would not hurt them. If I kicked the boys, I would be sold to some unkind person who would hit me all the time. We must always remember what a good place we live in."

"لا، لن أفعل ذلك أبدا، فلقد أوقعتهم لأنني أعرف أن ذالك لن يضرهم، فإذا ركلت الأولاد، سيتم بيعي إلى شخص قاس و الذي يرغب أن يضربني في كل وقت، فيجب علينا دائما أن نتذكر المكان الجيد الذي نعيش فيه."

Questions and answers

10. What did Mr Squire Gordon do with the man who hit the horse ?

ماذا فعل سكوايز مع الرجل الذي ضرب الحصان؟

- He cried and told him that he must understand that a

صرخ و اخبره انه يجب ان يفهم ان

horse isn't a machine. الحصان ليس الة

11. What did Ginger decide to do when Mr Squire Gordon shouted at the man ? ماذا قررت جينجر ان تفعل عندما صرخ سكواير في الرجل؟

- She decided not to kick or bite people any more. قررت الا تركل او تعض بعد ذلك

12. What did Merrylegs do with boys ? ماذا فعل ميريليجز مع الاولاد؟

- He threw them off. القاهم ارضا

13. Why did Merrylegs threw the boys ? لماذا القى الاولاد ارضا؟

a. Because they hit him with a stick. لانهم ضربوه بعصا

b. To give them a lesson. ليلقنهم درسا

14. What did the boys think about horses ماذا كان يعتقد اولاد عن الخيول

-They thought that a horse is like a machine. ان الحصان مثل الاة

15. What lesson did Merrylegs want to teach the boys ? ما الدرس الذى اراد تعليمه للاولاد

-Horses are not like machines ان الخيول ليست كالالات

16. Why didn't Merrylegs kick the boys and only threw them ? لماذا لم يركل الاولاد

- Because if he kicked the boys, he would be sold to unkind personand he didn't want to hurt them. لانه لو ركلهم سيتم بيعه الى شخص غير طيب و لانه لم يكن يريد ايذائهم

اسئلة التفكير النقدى

1. Why do you think that horses were so important in the nineteenth century when Black Beauty was written ?
- Because they were the main mean of transport at that time.
2. How do we know that Black Beauty had good owners ?
-Both Farmer Grey and Squire Gordon,dealt with Black Beauty kindly and gave him good food.
3. What do you think Beauty's mother mean when she said "The hard you work, the kinder people will be to you." ?
- She meant that people like hardworking horses.
4. Why do you think Ginger will stop biting when people become kind to her?
- Because if you are a kind person to a horse, he will work hard and be good and kind to you.
5. Do you think Ginger like pulling Squire's carriage with Black Beauty ?Why?
- Yes, Because they became friends.
6.In what way do you think working animals are better or worse than a machine ?
- I think working animals aren't like machines, they need people to be kind to them.
7. Why do you think that people weren't nice to Ginger in the past ?
- Because she kicked and bit them.
8. What do you think people should do with horses that bite or kick ?
- They should try to be kind to them.
9.Do you think that Merrylegs was wrong to throw the older boys off his back ? Why / Why not ?
- No, because he didn't hurt the boys and he wanted to teach them a lesson.
10-Do you think that Squire Gordon was right to be angry with the man who hit the horse ? Why / Why not ?
- Yes, because the man wasn't kind to his horse.
11.Do you think that Merrylegs was right to behave badly with the children? Why / Why not ?

- Yes, because the older boys were not kind to him.

اسئلة كتاب المدرسة

***. a. Match column A with column B:**

A	B
1. Farmer Grey (e) 2. Black Beauty (a) 3. Merrylegs (b) 4. Ginger (c)	a. The horse who tells the story. b. A short, fat horse. c. A horse who had a difficult past. d. A horse who forgot his mother's advice. e. Black Beauty's first owner.

A	B
1. Black Beauty (b) 2. Black Beauty's mother (a) 3. Squire Gordon (e) 4. Squire Gordon's wife (d)	a. She said, "Never bite or kick, even when you are just playing a game". b. This horse had one white foot. c. This horse had short, fat legs. d. She named the horse "Black Beauty". e. Farmer Grey sold Black Beauty to this person.

b. Answer the following questions:

1. Who was Farmer Grey?
• He was Black Beauty's first owner.
2. Why did Ginger **often** bite or kick **people?**
• Because her first owners were not kind to her and they hit her hard.
3. Why did Squire Gordon and his **wife** call the horse Black **Beauty?**
• Because he was handsome.
4. Why **do you** think that horses were **so** important in the nineteenth century when Black **Beauty** was written?
• Because people used them to travel around and to pull their carriages.
5. Why **do** you think that **people** were not nice **to** Ginger in the **past?**
• Because they didn't understand that horses are not machines
6. What do you think people should do with horses that bite or kick?
• I think they should be kind to them.
7. What advice did Black Beauty's mother gave him?
• She advised him not to bite or kick.
8. What was Birtwick Park like?
• It was a big house with large fields and comfortable stables.
9. What did the horses think of Birtwick Park?
• They liked it.
10. How do you **know** that **Black Beauty had good owners?**
• Farmer Gray gave the horses good food and spoke to them kindly. Squire Gordon was also kind. He never hurt his horses.
11. Do you think that Merrylegs was wrong to throw the older boys off his back? Why?
• He was not wrong to do this, because he didn't hurt the boys and he wanted them to learn

to be kind to horses.

12. Who helped Black Beauty to learn to pull a carriage?

• His mother helped him.

13. Why did Squire Gordon's children stop visiting Merrylegs?

• As they knew that Ginger bit and kick people,

14. Why did Ginger sometimes bite or kick?

• **Because** people were **not** kind **to her** in the **past.**

15. Do you think that Merrylegs was right to behave badly with the children? Why? Why not?

• Yes, because the older boys were not being kind to him.

16.Do you think **Squire** Gordon **was** right **to** be angry with the man **who** worked **for** him? Why? Why **not?**

• Yes, because the man was not being kind to his horse.

CLASS' WORK

*** a. Match column A with column B:**

A	B
1. Merrylegs 2. Ginger 3. John Manly 4. Squire Gordon's children	a. were frightened of Ginger. b. was a kind helper c. A tall and thin horse. d. carried the children at Squire Gordon's. e. began to respect Squire Gordon

• B- Answer the following questions:

1- Describe Black Beauty and why he was named this name?

2- What did Black Beauty do with his mother?

3- Who was the first owner who Black Beauty worked for?

4- How do we know that Black Beauty had good owners?

5-Do you think that MerryLegs was right to behave badly with the children? Why?/ Why not?

HOME WORK

1- a. Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. Black Beauty 2. Squire Gordon 3. Ginger 4. Merrylegs	a. The horse who worked with cruel people in the past. b. She said that Ginger was sometimes bad-tempered. c. This horse had a white star on his head d. The person who bought Black Beauty from Farmer Grey e. A horse who had a red star.

• B- Answer the following questions:

1- Describe Ginger.

2- What was the first thing Black Beauty Learnt?

3- What did Ginger do to people who were not kind to her?

4- What do you think people should do with horses that bite or kick?
5- Do you think Squire Gordon was right to be angry with the man who worked for him? Why?/Why not?

.....

2- a. Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. John Manly 2. black beauty's mother 3. Merrylegs 4. Squire Gordon's children	a. He threw the boys on the ground b. She advised him to be gentle and good. c They used to bring nice things to Merrylegs. d. He looked after Black Beauty at Birtwick Park. e. He threw the girts on the ground.

• B- Answer the following questions:

1- What did the biggest horses do when they got too excited during races?
2- What did Beauty's mother help Black Beauty to learn?
3- Why did Gordon's children stop going to Merrylegs?
4- What made Ginger bad tempered?
5- Do you think that Merrylegs was wrong to throw older boys off his back? Why?/ Why not?

Chapter 2

Difficult journeys

amazing	رائع	lantern	مصباح \ فانوس	inn	خمارة \ حانة
blow	تهب	leave	ورقة شجرة	journey	رحلة طويلة
bridge	جسر \ كوبري	less	أقل	windy	عاصف
broken	مكسور	light	خفيف	wrong	خطأ
brush	يغسل بالفرشاة	loud	بصوت عالي	gate	بوابة
business	أعمال مالية	move	يتحرك	hours	ساعات
cigarette	سيجارة	pleased	مسرور	in the middle	في المنتصف
close	قريب	pull	يسحب	the wood	الغابة
collapse	ينهار	put into	يضع في	try	يحاول
continue	يستمر	put out	يطفئ \ يخمد	firefighters	رجال الإطفاء
cough	يكح \ يسعل	reach	يصل	flood	يفيض \ فيضان

crash	يصطدم	rest	راحة	follow	يتبع
cross	يعبر	shout	يصيح	suddenly	فجأة
fall into	يسقط في	softly	برقة	The other side	الجانب الأخر
filled with	ممتلئ بـ	storm	عاصفة	finally	أخيرا

One morning, I was put into a small carriage to take Squire Gordon and John on a long journey for the Squire's business. I liked pulling this carriage because it was very light and easy to pull. It was raining when we left and it was also windy, with many leaves blowing across the road.

في صباح أحد الأيام،وضعت في عربة صغيرة لأخذ سكوير جوردون وجون في رحلة طويلة لأعمال سكوير . أحببت سحب تلك العربة لأنها كانت خفيفة جدا وسهلة في سحبها. كان الجو يمطر عندما غادرنا وكان أيضا عاصف، بالعديد من الأوراق تتساقط على الطريق.

On our journey we crossed a bridge, and I saw that the water of the river was really high. Many of the fields that we passed were flooded and sometimes I had to pull the carriage through water on the road.

في رحلتنا عبرنا جسرا، ورأيت أن مياه النهر كانت عالية جدا. العديد من الحقول التي مررنا بها غمرتها المياه وأحيانا اضطررت لسحب العربة من خلال الماء على الطريق.

When we got to the town, I had a good rest while Squire Gordon did his work. We started to go home late in the afternoon, and now there was a real storm. I heard the strong wind blowing through the big trees that we passed.

عندما وصلنا المدينة، أخذت قسط جيداً من الراحة بينما كان سكوير جوردون يقوم بعمله. بدأنا في العودة للبيت في وقت متأخر وقت الظهيرة، والآن كانت هناك عاصفة بالفعل. سمعت رياح قوية تهب من خلال الأشجار الكبيرة التي مررنا بها.

" I will be happy when we are out of the wood," said Squire Gordon, and as soon as he said this, a big tree suddenly fell across the road in front of us with a loud CRASH!

وقال سكوير جوردون "سأكون سعيدا عندما نخرج من الغابة"، وبمجرد أن قال ذالك، سقطت شجرة كبيرة فجأة عبر الطريق أمامنا بصوت تحطم عالي!

"That was close!" said John.

قال جون "كان ذلك قريباً!"

"What can we do?" asked Squire Gordon.

فسأل سكوير جوردون" ماذا يمكن أن نفعل؟"

"We can't go forward," said John. "I think that we'll have to go back home a different way."

وقال جون "لا يمكننا المضي للأمام". وأضاف "اعتقد أن علينا العودة إلى البيت بطريقة مختلفة

Questions and answers

1.Where did Black Beauty take Squire Gordon and John to ? اين اخذ بيوتى سكواير و جون ؟

-To Squire's business. الى اعمال سكواير

2. Why did Black Beauty like pulling that carriage during the journey? طاذا احب جر تلك العربة

- Because it was light and easy to pull. لانها كانت خفيفة

3. What was the weather like when they left to Squrie Gordon's business? كيف كان الطقس عندما غادروا

- It was raining and windy. كان ممطر و عصف

4-What made Black Beauty's journey with Squire Gordon and John Difficult? ما الذى جعل الرحلة صعبة؟

-The weather was raining and stormy. ان الجو كان ممطر و عاصف

5. What was wrong with the fields during the rain? ماذا كان الضرر بالحقول اثناء المطر ؟

-They were flooded. المياة كانت مرتفعة

6. Why were many fields flooded? طاذا غمرت كثير من الحقول بالمياة

- Because the water of the river was high. لان مياة النهر كانت مرتفعة

7. What did Black Beauty have to do because of the flood ? ماذا اضطر بيوتى ان يفعل بسبب الفيضان؟

- He had to pull the carriage through water on the road. اضطر ان يسحب العربة خلال المياة على الطريق

8. What did Black Beauty do when they reached the town? ماذا فعل بيوتى عندما وصلوا الى المدينة ؟

- He had a good rest. اخذ قسطا جيدا من الراحة

9. What was Squire doing when Beauty had a rest ? ماذا كان يفعل سكواير اثناء حصول بيوتى على الراحة؟

- He was doing his work. كان يؤدى عمله

10. What did Beauty hear on their way home? ماذا سمع بيوتى و هم فى طريقهم للمنزل؟

- He heard the strong wind throw the big trees. سمع صوت رياح قوية تطيح بالاشجار

11. Why was the road close ? طاذا كان الطريق مغلق؟

- Because of the big tree that fell across the road. بسبب الشجرة التى سقطت على الطريق

12. What did John suggest after the crash ? ماذا اقترح جون بعد الاصطدام؟

- He suggested going back home a different way. اقترح العودة من طريق مختلف

So we went back along a different road. It was longer and when we got to the bridge, it was dark. We started crossing the bridge, but I felt that something was wrong, so I stopped.

لذلك عدنا بطول طريق مختلف. كان الطريق طويل، وعندما وصلنا إلى الجسر ، كان قد حل الظلام. بدأنا في عبور الجسر ، ولكنني شعرت أن شيئا ما كان خطأ، لذلك توقفت.

"Come on, Beauty!" said Squire Gordon, who tried to make me cross the bridge.

قال سكوير جوردون "هيا يا بيوتي!" ، والذي كان يحاول أن يجعلني أن أعبر الجسر .

"There's something wrong," said John. "what's the matter, Beauty?"

وقال جون "يوجد شيء ما خطأ". "ما الأمر ، بيوتي؟"

I knew that the bridge was not safe, but I could not tell him. Then we heard a man shout from the other side of the bridge.

كنت أعرف أن الجسر لم يكن آمنا ، ولكنني لم أستطع أن أخبره. ثم سمعنا رجلا يصرخ من الجانب الآخر من الجسر .

"Stop!" he called. "The bridge is broken in the middle. If you continue, you will fall into the river!"

فصرخ الرجل قائلاً "توقف!". "إن الجسر مكسور من المنتصف، فإذا استمريت ، فسوف تقع في النهر!"

'I see," John replied. " Thank you, sir!"

فأجاب جون قائلا " أعلم ذالك". "شكراً لك سيدي!"

"And thank you, Black Beauty!" called Squire Gordon. "You saved us!"

و نادى سكوير جوردون قائلا "شكرا لك، بلاك بيوتي!". "لقد أنقذتنا!"

We had to take another road home, but the wind was less strong now. At last we saw the gates of Birtwick Park.

كان علينا أن نأخذ طريقا آخر للمنزل، لكن الرياح كانت أقل قوة الآن. وفي النهاية رأينا أبواب بيرتويك بارك.

I was very pleased to be home and enjoyed my evening food because I was very tired.

كنت سعيداً جدا أن أكون في المنزل و استمتع بطعامي المسائي لأنني كنت متعبا للغاية.

Questions and answers

13. How was the road they took home ? كيف كان الطريق؟

- It was longer and dark. كان اطول و مظلم

14.Why did Black Beauty stop crossing the bridge ? لماذا توقف بيوتي عن عبور الجسر؟

- Because he knew that the bridge was not safe. لانه عرف ان الجسر غير امن

15.What happened at the bridge ? ماذا حدث عند الجسر

- Black Beauty stopped crossing it as he felt that it wasn't safe. توقف عن عبور الجسر لانه شعر ان الجسر غير امن

16. Why did the man on the other side of the bridge shout ? لماذا نادى الرجل بصوت عالي؟

- To warn Squire and John, because the bridge was broken in the middle. ليحذرهم ان الجسر مكسور من المنتصف

17. Wny didn't John drive Black Beauty over the bridge ? لماذا لم يقود جون بيوتي الى اعلى الجسر

- Because a man was on the other side of the bridge warned him as the bridge was broken. لان الرجل حذرهم من الجسر

18. Why did Squire Gordon thank Black Beauty ? لماذا شكر سكواير بيوتي؟

- Because he saved them. لانه انقذهم

19. What did they do when they found that the bridge was broken ? ماذا فعلوا عندما وجدوا الجسر مكسور؟

- They had to take another road home. كان عليهم ان يسلكوا طريقا اخر

20. How was Beauty when they reached home ? كيف كان بيوتي عندما وصل البيت؟

- He was tired but pleased. كان مرهقا لكن مسرورا

21. Why did Beauty enjoy his evening food ? لماذا استمتع بطعام المساء؟

- Because he was very tired. لانه كان متعب جدا

22. And thank you; Black Beauty. You saved us." Who said this ? does it show about the speaker ? وشكرا لك بيوتي لقد انقذتنا من قال هذا و ماذا يوضح هذا عن المتحدث؟

- Squire Gordon said that. It shows that Squire Gordon is a thankful and kind man. سكواير قالها و هذا يبين انه طيب القلب و رجل لطيف

23. Why did Squire Gordon try to make Black Beauty cross the bridge ? لماذا حاول سكواير ان يجعل بيوتي يعبر الجسر

- Because of the bad weather and he wanted to be out of the wood. بسبب الطقس السيئ و انه اراد ان يخرج من الغابة

A few weeks later, Squire Gordon and his wife decided to visit some friends who lived about sixty kilometres from my home. They drove Ginger and me about thirty-five kilometres on the first day. We stopped often before we reached the town where we would stay for the night at an inn. Ginger and I were fed and brushed. We were ready to go to sleep when another horse arrived. His young rider smoked a cigarette while his horse was brushed.

وبعد بضعة أسابيع، قرر سكوير جوردون وزوجته زيارة بعض الأصدقاء الذين يعيشون لحوالي ستين كيلومترا من بيتي. قادوا جينجر و أنا لحوالي خمسة وثلاثين كيلومترا في اليوم الأول. توقفنا في كثير من الأحيان قبل أن نصل إلى المدينة حيث يمكن أن نقيم لليلة في فندق. تم إطعام و تنظيف جينجر وأنا. كنا على استعداد للذهاب إلى النوم عندما وصل حصان آخر . السائق الشاب للحصان كان يدخن سيجارة بينما كان حصانه يغتسل.

I don't know how long I slept, or what time it was when I woke up. I felt uncomfortable although I did not know why. I heard Ginger coughing and I saw that the air was filled with smoke. Then I knew that there was a fire.

أنا لا أعرف كم من الوقت كنت قد نمت، أو كم كان الوقت عندما استيقظت. شعرت بعدم الارتياح على الرغم من أنني لم أكن أعرف لماذا . سمعت جينجر تكح ورأيت أن الهواء مليء بالدخان. ثم عرفت أن هناك حريق.

A man appeared with a lantern and tried to take the horses outside. We could see that he was worried and this frightened us even more. None of us wanted to leave although we knew we were in danger. What would happen to us? We did not want to go anywhere. Then John arrived.

ظهر رجل ومعه فانوس وحاول أن يأخذ الخيول بالخارج. يمكننا أن نرى أنه كان قلقا وهذا أخافنا أكثر . لم يكن أحد منا يريد المغادرة رغم أننا كنا نعرف أننا في خطر . ماذا كان سيحدث لنا؟ لم نكن نريد الذهاب إلى أي مكان. ثم وصل جون

Questions and answers

1.What did Squire Gordon and his wife decide to do after the business journey ? ماذا قررسكوايز و زوجته ان يفعلوا بعد رحلة العمل؟

- To visit some friends. قرروا ان يزوروا بعض الاصدقاء

2. Where did Gordon's friends live ? اين كان يعيش اصدقاء سكوايز

-They lived about sixty km. from Squire's home. على بعد 60 كيلومتر من منزل سكوايز

3. Who were the horses which Gordon and his wife took on their visit to their friends? ماهي الخيول التي اخذوها؟

- Black Beauty and Ginger. بيوتي و جينجر

4. How far did Squire Gordon drive Ginger and Beauty on the first day ? كم المسافة التي قادوها في اليوم الاول

- About thirty-five kilometres, حوالي 35 كيلومتر

5. Where did Squire Gordon and his wife spend the first nigh اين قضوا الليلة الاولى

-At an inn. في فندق

6. Who were fed and brushed at the inn ? من الذي تم اطعامه و تنظيفه في الفندق؟

- Black Beauty and Ginger. بيوتي و جينجر

7. What was the young rider doing while his horse was brushed ? ماذا كان يفعل الشاب ؟

- He was smoking a cigarette. كان يدخن سيجارة

8. How did Black Beauty feel when he woke up ? كيف كان شعور بيوتي عندما استيقظ ؟

-He felt uncomfortable. شعر بعدم الراحة

9. What did Black Beauty hear and see when he woke up ? ماذا سمع و راى عندما استيقظ؟

" He heard Ginger coughing and saw the air filled with smo سمع جينجر تكح و راى الهواء ملئ بالدخان

10. Why was Ginger coughing ? لماذا كانت جينجر تكح؟

- Because of the smoke in the air. بسبب الدخان الذى كان فى الهواء

11. Who tried to take the horses outside the fire ? من حاول ان ياخذ الخيول خارج الحريق؟

- A man with a lantern. رجل معه مصباح

12. Who arrived to save the horses ? من وصل لينقذ الخيول

-John. جون

"Come on, my beautiful horses, wake up please. It's time to go." He spoke softly and was so gentle with me that I stopped feeling frightened. I slowly followed him out of the building and away from the fire. When I saw that I was safe, I called out for the other horses to leave. Ginger later told me that I had saved her.

"هيا، يا خيولي الجميلة، استيقظوا من فضلكم. لقد حان وقت الذهاب." تحدث بهدوء وكان لطيف جدا معي لدرجة أنني توقفت عن الشعور بالخوف. تابعته ببطء خارج المبنى وبعيدا عن النار . عندما رأيت أنني آمن، صحت على الخيول الأخرى كي يغادروا . أخبرتني جينجر لاحقاً أنني قد أنقذتها.

By now the fire was bigger and, just as John led Ginger away from the fire, the building collapsed. Finally, some firefighters arrived to try to put out the fire. After many hours, the fire was no more.

وبحلول هذا الوقت أصبح الحريق كبيراً، بينما كان جون يقوم بقيادة جينجر بعيدا عن الحريق، انهار المبنى. وأخيرا، وصل بعض رجال الإطفاء لمحاولة إخماد الحريق. بعد ساعات عديدة، لم يصبح هناك حريق.

When we arrived at the house of Squire Gordon's friends the next evening, everyone was talking to John.

عندما وصلنا إلى منزل أصدقاء سكوير جوردون في المساء التالي، كان الجميع يتحدث إلى جون.

"It is one of the hardest things in the world to move horses when there is a fire," said Squire Gordon's friend. "What you did to help them was amazing."

وقال صديق سكوير جوردون: "إنها واحدة من أصعب الأشياء في العالم لنقل الخيول عندما يكون هناك حريق. "ما فعلته لمساعدتهم كان مذهلا."

Questions and answers

13. How did John speak to the horses ? كيف تحدث جون الى الخيول؟

- He spoke softly and was so gentle with them. برقة و كان لطيفا جدا معهم

14. How did Black Beauty feel when John spoke softly to them ? كيف شعر بيوتى عندما تحدث جون اليهم برقة؟

- He stopped feeling frightened. توقف عن الشعور بالخوف

15. When did Black Beauty call out for the other horses to leave ? متى نادى بيوتى باقى الخيول للمغادرة؟

- When he saw that he was safe. عندما راى انه امن

16. What happened to the building ? ماذا حدث للمبنى؟

-It collapsed. إنهار

17. Who arrived to put out the fire ? من وصل لاخماد الحريق؟

- Some firefighters. بعض من رجال المطافى

18. How long did the fire last ? كم المدة التى استمر فيها الحريق؟

- For many hours. لعدة ساعات

19. Why did Squire Gordon's friend admire John ? لماذا اعجب صديق سكواير بجون؟

- Because what he did to help the horses was amazing. لان ما فعله لمساعدة الخيول كان مدهشا

20. Who saved Ginger from the fire ? من انقذ جينجر من الحريق؟

- BlacK Beauty. بلاك بيوتى.

اسئلة التفكير النقدى

1- Why do you think Squire Gordon tried to make Black Beauty cross the bridge?
- He wanted to get out of the wood quickly as the weather was very bad.

2- What do you think would happen If Black Beauty didn't stop at the bridge?
-I think they would fall into the river.

3- What do you think would happen if someone smoked a cigarette inside a stable?
- I think smoking a cigarette inside a stable might cause a fire.

4- And thank you, Black Beauty. You saved us." Who said this? What does it show about the kind of man he is ?
- Gordon said this. It showed that he was kind.

5- Why do you think John was able to takethe horses outside the burning stables?
- Because he wasn't worried. He spoke so softly to make them stop feeling frightened.

6- Why do you think moving horses when there is a fire is very hard?
-I think horses stop thinking well when they are afraid.

7-Why do you think the horses wanted to stay in the stables although there was a fire?
-I think they were frightened and didn't know what to do.

8- What do you think would happen if John didn't come to take the horses outside the stables?
-I think all the horses would be burnt.

اسئلة كتاب المدرسة

***. a. Match column A with column B:**

A	B
1. John Manly (d) 2. Black Beauty (a) 3. Ginger (c) 4.Merrylegs (e)	a. saved Squire Gordon from the broken bridge. b. hit the horses hard. c. began to respect Squire Gordon. d. was Squire Gordon's helper. e. wanted to teach the boys a lesson about horses.

A	B
1. Squire Gordon's friends (d) 2. The rider in the stable (c) 3. Ginger (b) 4. Mrs Gordon (e)	a. didn't listen to Black Beauty when he called out. b. walked out of the stable when Black Beauty called her. c. smoked a cigarette and caused a fire. d. were amazed because John saved the horses. e. went with Squire Gordon to visit some friends.

b. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Black Beauty stop on the bridge?
• As he knew it was not safe; it was broken,
2. Why did Squire Gordon try to make Black Beauty cross the bridge?
• He didn't know the bridge was broken, so he wanted to continue the journey back home.
3. How did Gordon feel when he found out that the bridge was broken?
• I think he was surprised, and he felt safe.
4. What made Black Beauty's journey with Squire Gordon and John difficult?
• The bad weather, the broken bridge and a big tree fell across the road.
5. What happened at the bridge?
• Black Beauty stopped crossing it. And a man shouted asking them not to cross the bridge as it was broken.
6. Who started the fire at the stables?
• A careless rider who smoked a cigarette.
7. Why do you think that John was able to take the horses from the burning stables?
• I think because he was quiet and gentle. That made them stop feeling frightened and followed him out of the building.
8. Why do you think that moving horses when there is a fire is very hard?
• As they were frightened and it is difficult to control horses in these bad conditions JiaA
9. Why didn't Black Beauty take Squire Gordon and John home the way they came?
• As a big tree suddenly fell across the road in front of them.
10. Why didn't John drive Black Beauty over the bridge?
• As it wasn't safe; it was broken.
11. "And thank you. Black Beauty. You saved us "Who said this? What does it show the kind of man is?
• Gordon said this. This shows that he was a kind man.
12 Why do you think that horses wanted to stay in the stables although there was a fire?
• I think they were afraid and worried as they didn't know where they would go.
13. What happened when John came to take the horses from the stables?
• He was quiet and gentle. So/ Beauty stopped feeling frightened and followed him out of the building. Then the other horses came out.

CLASS WORK

*** a. Match column A with column B:**

A	B
1. Mrs Gordon 2.Ginger 3.The rider at the inn 4.The man with the lantern	a. caused a fire. b.The horses refused to come outside the inn with this person. c.She didn't like black beauty. d. went with Squire Gordon to visit some friends e. She told Black Beauty that he had saved her.

• B- Answer the following questions:

1- Why did Gordon and John have to change their way back home?
2- Why did Ginger cough when they were at the inn?
3- *W*What happened at the bridge?
4- What do you think would happen if John didn't come to take the horses from the stables?
5- Why do you think the horses wanted to stay in the stables although there was a fire?

HOME WORK

1- a. Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. Squire Gordon ' friend 2. Ginger 3. Black Beauty 4. John Manly	a. saved Squire Gordon from the broken bridge. b. was sod because John didn t save the horses. c. could save the horses from the burning stable. d. was amazed because John saved the horses. e. walked out of the stable when Beauty called out for the other horses.

• B- Answer the following questions:

1- What did Black Beauty do at the bridge? Why?
2- Why did the horses refuse to go outside the burning stable the man with a lantern?
3- Why did the firefighters come to the inn?
4- What do you think would happen if John didn't come to take the horses outside the stables?
5- Why do you think that moving horses during a fire is very hard?

.....

A	B
1. Ginger 2. Black Beauty 3. Firefighters 4. Squire Gordon	a. He wanted to make Black Beauty cross the bridge. b.They put out the fire at the burning stables. c. He wanted to feed Black Beauty. d. called out for the other horses to leave the inn e. was coughing when the air was filled with smoke at the inn.

• **b- Answer me renewing questions:**

1- How was the weather like during Black Beauty's journey with Squire Gordon and John?
2- Where did the big tree fall?
3- Who saved Ginger's life? How?
4- What do you think would happen if someone smoked a cigarette inside a stable?
5- Why do you think that the horses wanted to stay in the stables although there was a fire?

chapter 3

Jeo Green's lesson

ached	ألم	look after	يعتني بـ	helper	مساعد
alone	بمفردة	loudly	بصوت عالي	hills	تلال
angry with	غاضب من	luckily	لحسن الحظ	inn	حانة \ خمارة
arrive at	يصل إلى	mistakes	أخطاء	knock	يطرق
at once	على الفور	need	يحتاج	lantern	فانوس
bars	قضبان	neighbour	جار	unhappy	تعيس
best	الأفضل	note	ملاحظة	village	قرية
blanket	بطانية	owners	أصحاب \ ملاك	warm	دافئ
bring	يحضر	parent	والد	wheels	عجلات
change	تغيرات	practise	يتمرن	whip	السوط
climate	مناخ	problem	مشكلة	energy	طاقة
come over	ينتهي	quiet	هادئ	explain	يفسر
cover	يغطي	realise	تدرك	hard worker	عامل مجد لعملة
deal with	يتعامل مع	return	يعود	start	يبدأ
describe	يصف	rudely	بوقاحة	the police	الشرطة
difficult	صعب	stand	يقف	difficulties	صعوبات

When we returned to Birtwick Park, we heard that John was to have a new helper. His name was Joe Green and he was fourteen years old.

عندما عدنا إلى بيرتويك بارك، سمعنا أن جون كان لديه مساعد جديد . وكان اسمه جو جرين وكان عمره أربعة عشر عاما .

"Are you sure you don't need someone who is older than this?" asked Squire Gordon.

فسأل سكير جوردون قائلا "هل أنت متأكد أنك لا تحتاج إلى شخص أكبر من ذلك؟".

"No, Sir," said John. "Joe is small, but he wants to learn and he is a hard worker. I was the same age when I started here. I had no family, but you looked after me as well as any parent. Now I live here with a good job and a good living. It is only right that I do the same to this new boy, Joe Green."

قال جون "لا، يا سيدي".. "جو صغير، لكنه يريد أن يتعلم وهو عامل مجتهد، فلقد كنت في نفس العمر عندما بدأت هنا، ولم يكن لدي عائلة، ولكنك اعتنيت بي مثل كما لو كنت والدي، والآن أعيش هنا بعمل جيد وحياة جيدة، ومن الصحيح أن أفعل الشيء نفسه لهذا الولد الجديد، جو جرين."

In the next few weeks, Joe learned to sweep the floor, bring in the food and wash the carriage. He was too small to brush Ginger or me, so he practised on Merrylegs. He was a happy boy who was always singing.

في الأسابيع القليلة التالية، تعلم جو كنس الأرضية، وجلب الطعام وغسل العربة. كان صغير جدا لتنظيف جينجر أو أنا، لذلك قام باطمارس على ميريليجز . كان صبي سعيدا كان دائما يغني.

However, it was not always a happy time. One day, something happened that stopped Joe singing for some time.

ومع ذلك، لم يكن دائما وقت سعيد . فذات يوم ، حدث شيء ما جعل جو في التوقف عن الغناء لبعض الوقت.

John woke me up one morning when it was still dark. Almost before I could open my eyes, he was riding me past the house.

Questions and answers

1. Who was Joe Green ? — من هو جو جرين؟

- He was John's new helper. — مساعد جون الجديد

2. How old was Joe Green ? — ماعمر جو؟

- Fourteen years old. — اربعة عشر عاما

3. Why did John choose Joe as a helper? — لماذا اختاره جون؟

- Because he thought that Joe wanted to learn and he was a hard worker. — لان جو اراد ان يتعلم و انه كان مجتهد

4. What is the similarity between John and Joe ? — ما وجه التشابه بينهم؟

- They both started to work at the same age. — بدا كلاهما العمل بنفس السن

-They are both hard workers and had no family. — كلاهما جاد في العمل و ليس لديهم عائلة

5. Why did John teach Joe and look after him ? — لماذا علمه جون و اعتنى به؟

- Because he was the same age as John when he started his work at Squire's house — لانه بدا بنفس عمره

6. Who looked after John when he was young ? — من اعتنى بجون عندما كان صغيرا

- Squire Gordon looked after him as well as any parent. — سكواير كما لو كان والده

7. What did Joe learn to do at first ? — ماذا تعلم جو في البداية؟

- He learned to sweep the floor, bring in the food and wash the carriages. — ان يكنس و يحضر الطعام و يغسل العربات

8. Why couldn't Joe brush Ginger or Beauty ? لماذا لم يستطع تنظيف جينجر ؟

- Because he was too small. لانه كان صغير جدا

9.Why did Joe Green have to brush Merrylegs, but not the other horses ? لماذا كان عليه تنظيف مريلجز و ليس الجياد الاخرى

- Because he was too small to brush other horses, so he practised on Merrylegs. لانه كان صغير جدا

10. What did Joe use to do when he was working ? ماذا كان يفعل عندما كان يعمل؟

- He was always singing. كان يغني

أيقظني جون ذات صباح عندما كان لا يزال الجو مظلما . تقريبا قبل أن أتمكن من فتح عيني، كان يركبني ماراً بالمنزل.

"Ride as fast as you can!" called Squire Gordon, who was standing by the door with a lantern in his hand. "Take this note to Dr White. My wife is very ill! When you find the doctor, Black Beauty can rest at the inn."

"أنطلق بالحصان بأسرع ما يمكن!" ذلك ما صرخ به سكوير جوردون ، الذي كان يقف بجانب الباب بمصباح في يده. "خذ هذه الورقة إلى الدكتور وايت. فزوجتي مريضة للغاية! عندما تجد الطبيب، بلاك بيوتي يمكن أن يستريح في الفندق."

"Yes, Sir!" cried John and he rode me as quickly as could through the village and out along the river. We went through another village, through a dark wood, up and down hills, until at last we came to the town. Everything was quiet and everyone was sleeping. Finally, we arrived at Dr White's house.

فصرخ جون قائلا "نعم يا سيدي!"فركبني و انطلقنا بأسرع ما يمكن من خلال القرية وعلى طول النهر . ذهبنا من خلال قرية أخرى، من خلال غابة مظلمة، صعودا وهبوطا بالتلال، حتى في النهاية وصلنا إلى المدينة. كل شيء كان هادئا وكان الجميع نائمين. وأخيرا، وصلنا إلى منزل الدكتور وايت.

John knocked loudly on the doctor's door.

فقرع جون باب الطبيب بصوت عال.

"Mrs Gordon is very ill. You must come now," said John, passing the doctor the note.

فقال جون: "السيدة جوردون مريضة جدا، ويجب أن تأتي الآن." ثم أعطاه الورقة.

"I will come at once, but I have a problem. My son has taken my horse and I do not have another. Can I ride yours?"

"سأأتي على الفور، لكن لدي مشكلة، قد أخذ ابني حصاني وليس لدي حصان آخر ، هل يمكنني ركوب حصانك؟"

He's very hot because he has run all the way here. But I think it's the only way to save Mrs Gordon. I'll stay here and you can ride Black Beauty."

لقد نال الحر منه لأنه قد جري على طول الطريق إلى هنا . ولكني أعتقد أنها الطريقة الوحيدة لإنقاذ السيدة جوردون. سأبقى هنا وأنت يمكنك ركوب بلاك بيوتي.

Questions and answers

11 - What did Squire Gordon ask John to do when Squire's wife was ill ? ماذا طلب سكواير منه ان يفعل عندما كانت زوجته مريضة؟

-To ride as fast as he could and give a note to Dr White ان يقود باقصى سرعة و يعطى رسالة لدكتور وايت

12. Why did Squire Gordon ask John to ride fast ?
طاذا طلب منه ان يقود باقصى سرعة؟

-Because his wife was ill and to give Dr White a note.
لان زوجته كانت مريضة

13. Why did Joe stop singing for some time?
طاذا توقف عن الغناء بعض الوقت؟

- Because Mrs Gordon was very ill.
لان زوجة سكواير كانت مريضة

14. Why was Black Beauty hot when they arrived at Dr White's ?
طاذا شعر بيوتى بالحرارة عندما وصلوا عند وايت

- Because he had run all the way.
لانه جري طوال الوقت

15. What's the only way for Dr White to save Mrs Gordon ?
ما هى الطريقة الوحيدة لانقاذ الزوجة

-To ride Black Beauty and that John would stay there.
ان يمتطى بيوتى و ينتظر جون

16.Why did John ride Black Beauty to another village during the night?
طاذا امتطى جون بيوتى لقرية اخرى ليلا ؟

-To bring Dr White as Mrs Gordon was very ill.
ليحضر الطبيب لان الزوجة كانت مريضة جدا

17.Why did the doctor ride Black Beauty instead of his own horse ?
طاذا امتطى الطبيب بيوتى بدلا من جواده

-Because his son had taken his only horse.
لانه ابنه اخذه جواده الوحيد

18.Why was Black Beauty not able to rest when John rode him to get a doctor in the night ?
طاذا لم يستريح بيوتى عندما وصل للطبيب؟

- Because Dr White had to ride Beauty back to save Mrs Gordon who was very ill as his son had taken his only horse.
لان الطبيب كان عليه ان يمتطى بيوتى لان ابنه اخذ جواده الوحيد

It is hard for me to describe the journey back. The doctor was heavier than john and not such a good rider. I had almost no energy when we finally arrived back at Birtwick Park. The doctor ran into the house, and young Joe took me inside. All my hair was wet and I felt so hot.

كان من الصعب لي أن أصف العودة من الرحلة. كان الطبيب أثقل من جون ولم يكن خيالا جيداً. لم يكن تقريبا لدي طاقة عندما وصلنا أخيرا إلى بيرتويك بارك. دخل الطبيب إلى المنزل جرياً، وأخذني الشاب جو للداخل. كان كل شعري مبللاً وشعرت بسخونة شديدة.

Poor Joe was young and did not know what to do. A horse who has just run a long way needs to stay warm and drink warm water. It is a dangerous time for the horse, so someone should stay and watch him, too. Joe did not do this. He did not put a warm blanket on me because I was hot, and then he gave me cold water to drink, before he went away and left me alone in the stable.

كان المسكين جو صغير السن ولا يعرف ما يجب القيام به. فالحصان الذي يقطع مسافة طويلة يحتاج إلى البقاء دافئا ويشرب الماء الدافئ. إنه وقت عصيب للحصان، لذلك يجب على شخص ما البقاء معه ومتابعته أيضا . لم يفعل جو ذلك. فلم يضع بطانية دافئة علي و ذلك لأنني كنت ساخنا، ثم أعطاني الماء البارد للشرب، قبل أن يذهب بعيدا ويتركني وحيدا في الإسطبل.

I began to feel very cold. All my body ached. I lay down and tried to sleep. When I woke up, John was at my side. It was difficult for me to breathe. He covered me with blankets and gave me some hot water. He then stayed with me night and day. Squire Gordon also came to see me.

بدأت أشعر ببرودة شديدة. كان كل جسدي يؤلمني. اضطجعت على الأرض وحاولت النوم. عندما استيقظت، كان جون بجانبي. كان من الصعب لي أن أتنفس. فقام بتغطيتي ببطانيات وأعطاني بعض الماء الساخن. ثم بقى معي ليلا ونهارا. أيضا جاء سكوير جوردون لرؤيتي.

Poor Black Beauty! You saved my wife's life, and now you are as ill as she was." Although I was ill, I was happy to hear that she was well again.

بلاك بيوتي المسكين! لقد قمت بإنقاذ حياة زوجتي، والآن أصبحت مريضا كما كانت هي. "على الرغم من أنني كنت مريض، كنت سعيدا لسماع أنها أصبحت بخير مرة أخرى.

Young Joe Green was very unhappy. He knew that I was ill because he did the wrong things that night. Luckily, I became well again in a few days, but I knew that John was angry with Joe.

كان الشباب جو جرين مستاء للغاية. كان يعلم أنني مريض لأنه فعل الأشياء الخاطئة في تلك الليلة. لحسن الحظ، لقد أصبحت بخير مرة أخرى في غضون أيام قليلة، ولكن كنت أعرف أن جون كان غاضبا من جو.

A few weeks later, Joe took me out to take a message on a neighbour. On the way home, we passed a carriage that was full of heavy metal bars. It was taking them to a nearby factory. The wheels of the carriage could not move because the carriage was so heavy and there was thick mud on the road. Two horses were trying to pull the carriage, but they could not. The driver was hitting them hard with a whip.

بعد بضعة أسابيع، أخذني جو بالخارج ليأخذ رسالة الى أحد الجيران. في الطريق إلى البيت، مررنا على عربة كانت مليئة بالقضبان المعدنية الثقيلة. كانت تأخذهم إلى مصنع قريب. لم تستطع عجلات العربة أن تتحرك لأن العربة كان ثقيلة جدا وكان هناك طين سميك على الطريق. اثنان من الخيول حاولوا سحب العربة، لكنهما لم يتمكنا من ذلك. وكان السائق يضربهم بشدة بالسوط.

Questions and answers

1. How was the journey back for Black Beauty ? كيف كانت رحلة العودة؟

- It was hard as the doctor was heavier and not such a good rider. كانت صعبة لان الطبيب كان اثقل و لم يكن فارسا جيدا

2- What happened to Black Beauty when he got back home? ماذا حدث لبيوتي عندما عاد للمنزل؟

a) His hair was wet. b) He felt very hot. شعره كان مبلل –شعر بالسخونة الشديدة

3.What did Dr White do when he arrived ? ماذا فعل الطبيب عندما وصل؟

- He ran into the house to save Mrs Gordon. اسرع الى داخل المنزل لينقذ الزوجة

4. What does a horse who has just run a long way need ? ماذا يحتاج الحصان الذي جري مسافة طويلة؟

-He needs to stay warm and drink warm water. يحتاج ان يبقى دافئا و يشرب ماء دافئ

5-What did Joe do wrong ? ما الخطأ الذي ارتكبه جو؟

- He didn't cover Beauty with a blanket and gave him cold water. لم يغطيه بالبطانية واعطاه ماء بارد

6. What happened to Black Beauty when he drank cold water ? ماذا حدث عندما شرب الماء البارد؟

- He felt very cold, couldn't breathe and his body ached. شعر بالبرودة و لم يستطع التنفس و جسمه الم

7. What did John do for Beauty when he was ill ? ماذا فعل جون لبيوتي عندما كان مريضا؟

- He stayed beside him and covered him with a blanket and gave him some hot water. ظل بجانبه و غطاه ببطانية و اعطاه ماء ساخن

8. Why was John angry with Joe ? لماذا غضب جون من جو؟

- Because he did the wrong things with Beauty. لانه تصرف بطريقة خاطئة مع بيوتى

9. What did Squire Gordon do when he knew that Beauty was ill ? ماذا فعل سكوايز عندما عرف ان بيوتى مريض

- He came to see him and told him that he saved his wife's life. اتى ليراه و اخبره انه انقذ حياة زوجته؟

10. What made Black Beauty happy when Squire Gordon visited him ? ما الذى جعل بيوتى سعيدا عندما زاره سكوايز

-When he heard that Mrs Gordon was well again. عندما سمع ان الزوجة تحسنت مرة اخرى

11. Why was Joe very unhappy? لماذا كان جو حزين؟

- Because he knew that Beauty was ill because of the wrong things he did that night. لانه عرف ان بيوتى مرض بسبب الاشياء الخاطئة التى فعلها.

12.When did Joe become happy again ? متى اصبح جو سعيدا مرة اخرى؟

- When Black Beauty became well again. عندما تحسن بيوتى مرة اخرى.

13. What did Joe and Beauty pass on their way home ? على ماذا مروا فى طريق عودتهم؟

-They passed a carriage that full of heavy metal bars. مروا بعربة مليئة بقضبان معدنية ثقيلة.

14. Where did the carriage take the metal bars to? اين كانت تاخذ العربة القضبان المعدنية؟

-To a nearby factory. الى مصنع مجاور

15. Why couldn't the carriage move ? لماذا لم تتمكن العربة من الحركة؟

a) Because it was carrying the metal bars which were so heavy. القضبان كانت ثقيلة

b) There was thick mud on the road. كان هناك وحل سميك فى الطريق

16. Why was the driver hitting the horses ? لماذا كان السائق يضرب الخيول؟

- Because they were unable to pull the carriage. لانهم لم يكن بامكانهم جر العربة

"Stop, please," said Joe. "The wheels will not move in this mud."

قال جو "توقف، من فضلك"، " لن تتحرك العجلات في هذا الطين."

"Be quiet," said the driver rudely.

فقال السائق بوقاحة "أهدئ،".

"I can help you take some of the metal from the carriage, then it will move," said Joe.

قال جو "يمكنني مساعدتك في أخذ البعض من الطعدن من العربة، وبعد ذلك ستتحرك "،.

"Go away," said the driver. "I know what I'm doing." He continued to hit the horses.

فقال السائق "اذهب بعيداً". "فانا أعرف ما أفعله". واستمر في ضرب الخيول.

Joe quickly rode me to the factory and found the manager. Joe told him what the man was doing.

فسريعاً جو ركبني بسرعة إلى المصنع و وجد المدير . فأخبره جو بما يفعله الرجل.

"Thank you, Joe," said the manager. "I'll deal with the man. Will you tell the police what you saw?"

قال المدير "شكرا لك، جو"، "سأتعامل مع الرجل، هل سوف تخبر الشرطة بما رأيته؟"

"Yes, I will!" said Joe.

فقال جو "نعم، سأفعل!".

The manager went to find the carriage with the metal and Joe went home. He told John what happened.

ذهب المدير للعثور على العربة المعدن وذهب جو إلى المنزل. فأخبر جون بما حدث.

"You did the right thing," said John.

قال جون "لقد فعلت الشيء الصحيح".

We heard later that the police asked Joe about what he had seen. Joe explained very well and when the police saw the poor horses, they sent the driver to prison for two or three months.

سمعنا لاحقًا أن الشرطة سألت جو عما شاهده. فأوضح جو بشكل جيد جدا وعندما رأت الشرطة الخيول المسكينة، فأرسلوا السائق للسجن لمدة شهرين أو ثلاثة أشهر .

It was happy to see the change that came over Joe. He learned from his mistakes to become a very good worker. John was now very pleased with him.

كان من السعادة رؤية التغيير الذي حدث على جو . تعلم من أخطائه أن يصبح عاملا جيدا جدا . أصبح جون الآن مسرور جدا به.

"You look taller than you did last week!" said John.

قال جون "تبدو أطول مما كنت في الأسبوع الماضي! ".

Soon Joe was singing happily again every day.

و سريعاً ما كان جو يغني بسعادة مرة أخرى كل يوم.

However, Mrs Gordon became ill again in the years that followed. The doctor said that she should live in a warmer climate. We heard that Squire and Mrs Gordon were going to leave England. Everybody was very sad.

ومع ذلك، أصبحت السيدة جوردون مريضة مرة أخرى في السنوات التالية. وقال الطبيب إنها يجب أن تعيش في مناخ أكثر دفئا . فسمعنا أن سكوير والسيدة جوردون سيغادران إنجلترا . كان الجميع حزينا للغاية.

All Squire Gordon's horses were sold to new owners. Ginger and I were the last horses to leave Birtwick Part and one morning, we took Squire Gordon and his wife to the railway station. We never saw them again.

تم بيع جميع خيول سكوير جوردون لأصحابها الجدد . كانت جينجر وأنا آخر الخيول لمغادرة بيرتويك بارك وذات صباح ، أخذنا سكوير جوردون وزوجته إلى محطة السكة الحديد . لم نرهم أبداً مرة ثانية.

Ginger and I found out that we were going to live at Earlshall Park, the home of a rich Earl called Smythe. John took us there the next day and told the new helper, a man called York, that we were the best horses they could have. Then John left, too. I felt very sad to see him go. I did not realise that my new home with Earl and Lady Smythe would bring new difficulties for Ginger and me.

اكتشفنا أنا و جينجر أننا سنعيش في إيرلشال بارك، منزل لإيرلي غني يدعى سميث. أخذنا جون إلى هناك في اليوم التالي وأخبر المساعد الجديد ، وهو رجل يدعى يورك، بأننا أفضل الخيول التي يمكن أن يحصلوا عليها . ثم رحل جون أيضا . شعرت بالحزن الشديد لرؤيته يرحل. لم أكن أدرك أن بيتي الجديد مع إيرل والسيدة سميث من شأنه أن يجلب صعوبات جديدة إلى جينجر و أنا .

Questions and answers

17. What did Joe ask the driver to do ?
ماذا طلب جو من السائق ان يفعل؟

- He asked him to stop hitting the horses.
طلب منه ان يتوقف عن ضرب الجياد

18. What did Joe offer to do to help the driver ?
ماذا عرض جو على السائق لمساعدته؟

- He offered to take some of the metal bars from the carriage, so that the carriage could move.
ان ياخذ بعض القضبان حتى تتحرك العربة

19. Did the driver accept Joe's offer ?
هل قبل السائق العرض؟

- No, he refused rudely.
لا ، رفض بوقاحة.

20. What did Joe do after the driver refused his help and continued hitting the horses ?
ماذا فعل جو بعض ان رفض السائق المساعدة و استمر فى ضرب الجياد؟

- He went to the factory and told the manager about the driver.
ذهب للمصنع و اخبر المدير

21 .What did the manager ask Joe to do ?
ماذا طلب المدير من جو ان يفعل.؟

- He asked him to tell the police what he saw.
طلب منه ان يخبر الشرطة بما راه.

22.What happened to the driver who hit the horses near the factory?
ماذا حدث للسائق؟

- He was sent to the prison for two or three months.
ارسل للسجن لمدة شهرين او ثلاثة

23. Why was John happy to see the change that came over Joe ?
لماذا كان جون سعيد لرؤية تغيير جو؟

- Because Joe learned from his mistakes and became a very good worker.
لانه تعلم من اخطاؤه و اصبح عامل جيد

24.Why did Squire Gordon sell his horses ?
لماذا باع سكواير خيوله؟

- Because they were going to leave England.
لانهم كانوا سيغادروا انجلترا

25. Why were Squire Gordon and his family going to leave England?
لماذا سيغادروا انجلترا؟

- Because Mrs Gordon became ill again and the doctor advised her to live in a warmer climate.
لان الزوجة مرضت مرة اخرى و نصحها الطبيب ان تعيش فى مناخ ادفأ

26. Who bought Black Beauty from Squire Gordon ?
من الذى اشترى بيوتى؟

-A rich Earl called Smythe.
احد النبلاء الاغنياء يدعى سميز

27. Where did the new owner. Earl Smythe, live ?
اين كان يعيش سميز؟

- At Earlshall Park.
ايرلشال بارك

28.Who is York ?
من هو يورك؟

- The new helper at Earishall Park.
المساعد الجديد فى ايرلشال بارك

29. What did John tell the new helper, York, about Ginger and Black Beauty before leaving them ?
ماذا اخبر جون المساعد الجديد عن بيوتى و جينجر قبل مغادرتهم؟

- He told him that they were the best horses they could have.
انهم افضل الخيول التى يمكن ان يمتلكوها.

30. Why was Black Beauty worried about his new life ?
لماذا كان بيوتى قلقا بشان حياته الجديدة؟

- Because he realised that it would bring new difficulties for him and Ginger.
لانه ادرك ان سوف يلاقى مصاعب جديدة له و لجينجر

اسئلة التفكير النقدى

1- Do you think John was right to be angry with Joe Green after Black Beauty became ill?
- Yes, he wanted him to learn from his mistakes.
2-Why do you think John said that Joe Green looked taller?
- I think it showed that Joe grew older because he started to learn from his mistakes,
3- Do you think that John was right to have a helper who only fourteen?
- Yes, as John was as young as him when he started work and he was o hard worker.
4- Why do you think that the driver of the carriage near the factory was rude to Joe?
- Because Joe was only fourteen and the driver was very angry.
5- What do you think would happen if Joe put a warm blanket on Black Beauty and gave him hot water?
- Black Beauty wouldn't be ill.
6- "Do you think Black Beauty and Ginger were happy to leave Birtwick Park? Why?
- No, because Squire Gordon was good owner.
7- What kind of man was the carriage driver in your opinion?
- He was rude and cruel.
8- Why do you think England wasn't a good place for Mrs Gordon to live in?
- Because it was very cold and she needed a warmer place.

اسئلة كتاب المدرسة

***. a. Match column A with column B:**

A	B
1. Joe Green (b) 2. John Manly (a) 3. The factory driver (e) 4. Mrs Gordon (c)	a. was angry with Joe for taking care of Black Beauty. b. reported the rude driver to the police. c. had to move to a warmer climate. d. took a note to Dr White. e. hit the horses with a whip.

A	B
1. Joe Green (d) 2. John Manly (b) 3. Squire Gordon and Mrs Gordon (e) 4. Earl and lady Smythe (a)	a. were Black Beauty's new owners. b. stayed with Black Beauty until he became better. c. hit the horses near the factory d. stopped singing after Black Beauty became ill. e. had to leave England.

b. Answer the following questions:
1. Why did John ride Black Beauty to another village during the night?
• To bring Dr White as Mrs Gordon was very ill.
2. What happened to Black Beauty after he returned with the doctor?
• He became ill after he had drunk cold water when he was hot.
3. Do you think that John was right to have a helper who is only fourteen?

• Yes, as John was as young as him when he started work; Joe wanted to learn and he was a hard worker.
4. Why do you think that the driver of the carriage near the factory was rude to Joe?
• I think because he didn't accept the advice or help from a young boy. He talked to Joe rudely.
5. Why did the doctor ride Black Beauty instead of his own horse?
• As his son had taken his own horse,
6. Why did Joe Green have to brush Merrylegs but not the other horses?
• As he was too young to brush other horses, like Black Beauty.
7. Why was Black Beauty not able to rest after John rode him to get a doctor in the night?
• As he had to return back with Dr White without taking rest because Mrs Gordon was very ill.
8. Was John right to be angry with Joe Green after Black Beauty became ill? Why? Why not?
• Yes, because he didn't do the right thing with Black Beauty when he was hot.
9. What happened to the man who hit the horses near the factory?
• He was sent to prison,
10. Why do you think John said that Joe Green "looked taller"?
• As he felt Joe became older when behaved -a^ better and started to learn from his mistakes,
11. Why did John ride Black Beauty as fast as he could to the town?
• To bring Dr White as Mrs Gordon was very ill.
12. What happened to Black Beauty when he got back home?
• He was very hot, Joe Green gave him cold water to drink, so he became sick.
13. What did Joe do wrong?
• He gave Black Beauty cold water to drink and didn't put a blanket on him when he was sick.
14. When did Joe become happy again?
• When Gohn was pleased with him again.
15. Why did Squire Gordon sell his horses?
• Because his wife was very ill and needed to live in a warmer place, so he had to leave England.
16. Who is York?
• He was the new helper at the country home of Earl Smythe.
17. Why was John happy to have a helper who was fourteen years old?
• As he was the same age when he started work for Mr Squire Gordon.
18. Do you think that fourteen is too young to learn to do a job? Why? / Why not?
• No, because boys in that age like learning new things.

CLASS WORK

*** a. Match column A with column B:**

A	B
1. John Manly 2.Mrs Gordon 3.Joe Green 4. The factory manager	a. was too small to brush Ginger and Black Beauty. b.was a better rider than the doctor. c. thanked Joe for telling him about the rude driver d. she became ill again. e. couldn't brush Merrylegs.

• **B- Answer the following questions:**

1- Who was Joe Green?
2- Why couldn't Black Beauty breathe and all his body ached after he returned with the doctor?
3- Why did Joe offer to take some of the metal bars from the carriage that he saw on his way home?
4- Do you think John was right to be angry with Joe Green after Black Beauty became ill?
5- Why do you think England wasn't a good place for Mrs Gordon to live in?

HOME WORK

1- a. Match column A with column B:

A	B
1. Black Beauty	a. asked the driver to stop hitting the horses.
2. Joe Green	b. Earl Smythe's helper.
3. York	c. He was hitting the horses with a whip.
4. The carriage driver	d. became very hot and tired after saving Mrs Gordon.
	e. asked the driver to stop feeding the horses.

• **B- Answer the following questions:**

1- Why couldn't Joe Green brush Black Beauty and Ginger?
2- How did John make Black Beauty get better?
3- Who went to prison for two or three months? Why?
4- What do you think was written on the note to Dr white?
5- What kind of man do you think the carriage driver was?

.....

A	B
1. Squire Gordon and Mrs Gordon	a. rode Black Beauty instead of his own horse.
2. Joe Green	b.was only fifteen.
3. John Manly	c. had to move to a warmer climate.
4. Dr White	d. He learned to sweep the floor and wash the carriages.
	e. stayed with Black Beauty until he became better.

• **b- Answer me renewing questions:**

1- Why did Squire Gordon send for Dr white?
2- Who looked after Black Beauty until he became well ? How?
3- What was Eart Smythe's helper called?
4- Why do you think John said that Joe Green looked taller?
5- Why do you think that the driver of the carriage near the factory was rude to Joe?